

LANGUAGE HACKING

A CONVERSATION COURSE
FOR BEGINNERS

SPANISH

LEARN BY SPEAKING - RIGHT AWAY

EMBRACE YOUR MISTAKES

MASTER POWER
PHRASES

DO 20% OF THE
WORK, GET 80%
OF THE RESULTS

BENNY LEWIS

BESTSELLING AUTHOR OF
FLUENT IN 3 MONTHS



LANGUAGE HACKING

A CONVERSATION COURSE
FOR BEGINNERS

SPANISH

*Learn how to speak Spanish
– with actual people –
right from the start!*

BENNY LEWIS
THE IRISH POLYGLOT

www.hodder.co.uk



All the **course audio** and **extra resources** you need to be a successful language hacker are available online for you to download.

Just go to www.teachyourself.com/languagehacking

THE LANGUAGE HACKING COMMUNITY

Speak Spanish – with actual people – right from the start!

Share your missions, connect with native speakers and meet like-minded learners in the bespoke **#LanguageHacking** community, developed with **italki**, an online community of over 2 million learners and 3000 teachers.

Simply go to www.italki.com/languagehacking

MISSION ACCOMPLISHED.



YOUR MISSIONS

AUDIO TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

...🔗 A note from Benny	vi
...🔗 How to use this course	vii
...🔗 What you'll find inside	vii
...🔗 What you'll find online	xi
...🔗 The Language Hacker contract	xii
...🔗 Pronunciation guide	xiii

UNIT 1: TALKING ABOUT ME

...🔗 CONVERSATION 1: The first words you'll use in any conversation	2
You'll learn ... <i>¿Qué tal?</i> for greetings, <i>Hola, soy ... ¿Y tú?</i> for introducing yourself	
...🔗 CONVERSATION 2: Describing your interests	7
You'll learn ... <i>Me gusta ... Me encanta ...</i> for saying what you like (or don't like)	
#languagehack: get a head start with words you already know	9
...🔗 CONVERSATION 3: Why are you learning Spanish?	12
You'll learn ... <i>¿Por qué? Porque quiero ...</i> for telling 'why'	
Your Mission: say your name, where you're from, where you live, why you're learning Spanish.	

UNIT 2: ASKING ABOUT YOU

...🔗 CONVERSATION 1: Words you need for asking questions	20
You'll learn ... <i>¿Te gusta ...? ¿Hablas ...? No, solo hablo ...</i> for asking and answering questions	
#languagehack: learn vocab faster with memory hooks	25
...🔗 CONVERSATION 2: How long have you been learning Spanish?	26
You'll learn ... <i>Desde cuándo</i> for asking 'since when' ... <i>desde (hace)</i> for saying how long (ago)	
...🔗 CONVERSATION 3: Sharing your opinions	32
You'll learn ... <i>Creo que ... Yo prefiero ... Debo ...</i> for expressing your opinion	
Your Mission: say which languages you speak or want to learn, how long you've been learning Spanish	

UNIT 3: SOLVING COMMUNICATION PROBLEMS

...🔗 CONVERSATION 1: Having an online chat	42
You'll learn ... <i>Gracias por enseñarme ...</i> for talking to someone new	
...🔗 CONVERSATION 2: I don't understand ...	49
You'll learn ... <i>Lo siento, no entiendo ...</i> for getting clarification	

...❖ CONVERSATION 3: Can you hear me now?	56
You'll learn ... <i>¿Puedes oírme? Necesito reiniciarlo ...</i> for talking online	
#languagehack: power-learn word genders with the word-endings trick	63
Your Mission: use survival phrases in conversation; tell where you're from or where you work.	
 UNIT 4: DESCRIBING YOUR FUTURE PLANS	
...❖ CONVERSATION 1: Excuse me, do you speak Spanish?	70
You'll learn ... <i>¿Te importa si ...? ¿Puedes sentarte aquí!</i> for striking up new conversations	
...❖ CONVERSATION 2: Where are you going?	77
You'll learn ... <i>¿Viajas? Debes visitar ... pasar ... tomar un tren ...</i> for talking about travel plans	
...❖ CONVERSATION 3: How are you spending the weekend?	84
You'll learn ... <i>Voy a + verb</i> and <i>primero ... luego ... después ...</i> for describing what you'll do	
#languagehack: say exponentially more with these five booster verbs	88
Your Mission: say where you plan to go, how you'll get there, what you'll see and do.	
 UNIT 5: TALKING ABOUT FAMILY AND FRIENDS	
...❖ CONVERSATION 1: What do you have planned?	96
You'll learn ... <i>Paso tiempo con ... La conozco de ...</i> for saying who you spend time with	
...❖ CONVERSATION 2: Who do you live with?	104
You'll learn ... <i>Conoce ... Tiene ... Estamos juntos ...</i> for describing people you know	
#languagehack: learn the patterns to decipher any new verb and its forms	107
...❖ CONVERSATION 3: There are four of us	110
You'll learn ... <i>Somos ... Tenemos ... Se llaman ...</i> for describing your family	
Your Mission: say how you know someone, where they live and work, what they like to do.	
 UNIT 6: HAVING SOME FOOD, DRINK, AND CONVERSATION	
...❖ CONVERSATION 1: For me, I'll have ...	120
You'll learn ... <i>Yo voy a tomar ... ¿Puede ponerme ...?</i> for ordering in restaurants	
...❖ CONVERSATION 2: In my opinion ...	128
You'll learn ... <i>Me gustaría ... Claro que ... Hay menos ...</i> for explaining your point of view	
...❖ CONVERSATION 3: What do you recommend?	135
You'll learn ... <i>Dime una cosa ... ¿Puedes recomendarme ...?</i> for asking someone's opinion	
#languagehack: sound more fluent with conversation connectors	139
Your Mission: give your opinions and recommendations; say which food and drinks you like	
 UNIT 7: TALKING ABOUT YESTERDAY ... LAST WEEK ... A LONG TIME AGO	
...❖ CONVERSATION 1: What did you do last weekend?	146
You'll learn ... <i>Ayer visitamos ... La semana pasada hablamos ...</i> for saying what you did	

...❖ CONVERSATION 2: A few months ago	151
You'll learn ... <i>He comenzado ... He aprendido ... ¿He dicho ...?</i> for speaking about the past	
...❖ CONVERSATION 3: I learned Spanish in school	156
You'll learn ... <i>Mi pronunciación ... un acento fuerte ...</i> for describing your progress in Spanish	
#languagehack: time travel – three ways to talk about the past using the <i>present</i>	160
Your Mission: tell a story about your past; say what you thought, where you went, what you earned.	
 UNIT 8: IT'S BEEN A WHILE!	
...❖ CONVERSATION 1: It's been a while!	166
You'll learn ... <i>¡Cuánto tiempo! ¿Qué tal todo? Veo que ...</i> for catching up with someone	
...❖ CONVERSATION 2: Your daily routine	172
You'll learn ... <i>A menudo ... De vez en cuando ... A veces ...</i> for describing your daily life	
...❖ CONVERSATION 3: Going out at night	176
You'll learn ... <i>Me encantaría ... ¡Eso estaría genial! ¿Qué debo llevar?</i> for making plans	
#languagehack: the rephrasing technique for talking your way through complicated sentences	182
Your Mission: say how you spend your time, how you spend your day; make plans.	
 UNIT 9: DESCRIBE IT!	
...❖ CONVERSATION 1: Describing the city	188
You'll learn ... <i>Hace calor ... Hace mucho sol ...</i> for describing your surroundings	
...❖ CONVERSATION 2: What would you buy for someone who ...	193
You'll learn ... <i>Mi hermano es joven ... Pensaría que ...</i> for describing people you know	
...❖ CONVERSATION 3: It looks like ...	199
You'll learn ... <i>¿Estos están bien? Los verdes ... mejores ...</i> for describing different items	
#languagehack: use your hidden moments to get Spanish immersion for the long term	204
Your Mission: say what's nearby, what something looks like; describe personalities.	
 UNIT 10: HAVING YOUR FIRST CONVERSATION	
#languagehack: develop a cheat sheet and go into 'autopilot' during your first conversation	212
Your Mission: have a one-on-one conversation with a native Spanish speaker	
 ADDITIONAL AUDIO	
TRANSCRIPTS	
ANSWER KEY	
223	
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	
240	

AUDIO TABLE OF CONTENTS*

*This eBook features interactive audio which is supported on Kindle Fire Tablets (3rd generation and above). Please note that customers who download this eBook to other devices will not be able to access the audio via the eBook. To access the free audio, go to library.teachyourself.com or the Teach Yourself Library app (available on Android and iOS).

00.00 (00:32)	03.05 (00:48)
00.01 (01:46)	03.06 (00:40)
00.02 (00:54)	03.07 (01:08)
01.01 (00:59)	03.08 (00:43)
01.02 (00:50)	03.09 (00:44)
01.03 (01:44)	04.01 (01:05)
01.04 (00:42)	04.02 (00:51)
01.05 (00:23)	04.03 (01:02)
01.06 (00:20)	04.04 (00:56)
01.07 (00:55)	04.05 (00:29)
01.08 (00:34)	04.06 (00:27)
01.09 (00:54)	04.07 (00:26)
01.10 (01:15)	04.08 (01:28)
02.01 (01:05)	04.09 (01:03)
02.02 (00:50)	04.10 (01:00)
02.03 (01:10)	05.01 (01:13)
02.04 (00:39)	05.02 (01:01)
02.05 (01:10)	05.03 (01:05)
02.06 (00:30)	05.04 (00:55)
02.07 (00:39)	05.05 (00:54)
02.08 (00:39)	05.06 (01:00)
02.09 (01:03)	05.07 (00:54)
02.10 (00:56)	05.08 (01:02)
02.11 (01:42)	06.01 (01:17)
03.01 (01:02)	06.02 (00:59)
03.02 (00:47)	06.03 (01:15)
03.03 (00:48)	06.04 (01:10)
03.04 (00:59)	06.05 (01:45)

06.06 (01:06)
06.07 (01:09)
06:08 (00:22)
06:09 (01:12)
06:10 (01:15)
07.01 (01:13)
07.02 (01:02)
07.03 (01:16)
07.04 (01:08)
07.05 (00:53)
07.06 (00:44)
07.07 (00:47)
07.08 (00:34)
08.01 (01:10)
08.02 (00:47)
08.03 (01:11)
08.04 (00:54)
08.05 (01:15)
08.06 (01:06)
08.07 (00:41)
08.08 (00:39)
09.01 (01:35)
09.02 (01:08)
09.03 (01:46)
09.04 (01:04)
09.05 (00:54)
09.06 (01:01)
09.07 (01:03)
09.08 (00:43)

09:09 (00:41)
10.01 (01:10)
10.02 (01:06)
10.03 (00:56)
10:04 (00:37)
Alphabet (00:42)
Days (00:13)
Months (00:21)
Seasons (00:09)
Numbers 0–09 (00:21)
Numbers 10–19 (00:19)
Numbers 20–29 (00:18)
Numbers 30–39 (00:18)
Numbers 40–49 (00:19)
Numbers 50–59 (00:20)
Numbers 60–69 (00:20)
Numbers 70–79 (00:20)
Numbers 80–89 (00:19)
Numbers 90–99 (00:19)
Numbers 100–110 (00:21)

A NOTE FROM BENNY



It's true that some people spend years studying Spanish before they finally get around to speaking the language.

But I have a better idea.

Let's skip the years of studying and jump right to the speaking part.

Sound crazy? No, it's language hacking.

#LanguageHacking is a completely different approach to learning a new language.

It's not magic. It's not something only 'other people' can do. It's simply about being smart with *how* you learn: learning what's indispensable, skipping what's not, and using what you've learned to have real conversations in Spanish right away.

As a language hacker, I find shortcuts to learning new languages – tricks and techniques to crack the language code and make learning simple so I can get fluent faster. When it comes to learning new languages, I focus on getting the biggest bang for my buck.

There's no need to learn every word and grammar rule before you start using the language. You just need to know *the most common* and *the most versatile* phrases you'll need in most situations, and how to 'speak around' the problem when there's something you don't understand or know how to say yet.

#LanguageHacking isn't just a course. It's a new way of thinking about language learning. It shows you how to learn a language as well as giving you all the language you need – and none of what you don't. You can use it on your own or with any other book to start speaking languages faster.

I'd like to show you how it's done. See you on the inside.

Benny 

Benny Lewis, Language Hacker

HOW TO USE THIS COURSE

The most common complaint I hear from language learners is:

'I studied Spanish for years in school. I can understand a few words when I see them, and even sometimes when I hear them, but I still can't speak the language.'

#LanguageHacking isn't like traditional courses. It's a *conversation* course, which means you will focus on building the language skills you need to have meaningful, real-life conversations with other people in Spanish – right away.

By the end of this course, you'll be able to introduce yourself and ask and answer hundreds of typical questions in Spanish. You'll know how to find and connect with other Spanish speakers no matter where you live. And you will gain the skills and strategies to have countless conversations entirely in Spanish – as well as the confidence to keep them going.

#LanguageHacking can be used either on its own or alongside any other language course - whether written, online, or in the classroom. Just grab your notebook and get started!

WHAT YOU'LL FIND INSIDE

This course will challenge you to **speak from day one** by completing ten missions which will grow your conversational abilities in Spanish. To keep that promise, I invite you to become a part of the language-hacking community, built with this course in mind, that gives you a safe and fun place to communicate with other likeminded and determined learners. You can complete the missions on your own, but you'll progress much faster if you use the language with real people, so I encourage you to submit your missions to the *#LanguageHacking* online community www.teachyourself.com/languagehacking for feedback (and secret mini-missions!)

SPEAKING FROM DAY 1

You can't learn to play the piano until you sit down and put your fingers on the keys. You can't play tennis until you pick up the racquet. And you can't learn a language if you don't speak it. By speaking from day one, you will:

- ❖ pick up expressions and language from others
- ❖ notice the expression gaps in your language you need to fill
- ❖ become aware of how other people say things
- ❖ get feedback from others

- ❖ improve your pronunciation and fluency
- ❖ conquer the fear of speaking a new language
- ❖ feel motivated by hearing your own progress.

BUILD YOUR LANGUAGE SKILLS

Build language through typical conversations

Each unit takes you through three **conversations** in Spanish that show you how the language is used in common, everyday contexts. The conversations build on each other to grow your vocabulary and prepare you for your mission. Treat each conversation like a lesson, and make sure you understand everything before you move on to the next conversation.

Figure it out exercises

You'll read each conversation and listen to the audio, then I'll help you **Figure it Out**. These exercises train you to start understanding Spanish on your own – through context, recognizing patterns, and applying other language-learning strategies – without relying on translations. By figuring out language for yourself, you'll internalize it better and recall it faster when you need it.

Notice exercises

Every conversation is followed by a **phrase list** with the key phrases, expressions, and vocab to know from that conversation, with English translations and pronunciation to help you. **Notice** exercises get you thinking about the new language and noticing how the language works, so you're gaining an intuitive understanding of Spanish.

Practice exercises

Practice exercises reinforce what you learn. You'll piece together different parts of what you know to figure out how to create new Spanish phrases on your own.

Put it together

Finally, you'll take everything you've learned and **Put it Together** to create your own repertoire in Spanish. I'll help you prepare 'me-specific' language you can use in real life conversations – that's actually relevant to you.

SUPPORT, TECHNIQUES, AND STRATEGIES

In language hacking, your ability to have conversations in Spanish is not limited by the number of words you know.

#LanguageHacks

You'll **learn unconventional shortcuts** to boost your language abilities exponentially. I reveal the different patterns, rules and tools to help you **crack the code and get fluent faster**. Each of the ten hacks equips you with techniques you can use in this course and throughout the rest of your learning journey.

As you go along, you may develop your own shortcuts for making learning simple. If you do, share them with others and me, and use the hashtag #languagehacking.

Conversation strategies

You'll learn essential conversation strategies, like **conversation connectors, filler words, and survival phrases** to strike up conversations and keep them flowing.

Grammar & pronunciation

We'll cover the foundation of the **grammar you need to know**, but I won't overload you with what's not essential to communication. I'll help you understand the important parts of Spanish **pronunciation** and share techniques to help you get them right.

You don't need to learn all the grammar. A lot of the time you can learn language in 'chunks' - the same way you learned your native language. You learned to say 'there it is' before you ever understood what each individual word meant on its own ... and you still got your point across.

Side notes

I'll share more insights as we go along – like culture tips about Spanish speakers and Spanish-speaking countries, vocab tips on how to get creative with new phrases, and mini-hacks for better learning.

Progress you can see

You will see your progress build steadily throughout this course. Before you finish each unit, you'll **check your understanding** with audio practice that acts as a 'virtual conversation partner'. This practice gives you time to collect your thoughts and speak at your own pace.

Before you move on to your mission, you'll do a **self-assessment checklist** to make sure you're prepared and to keep a visual record of the progress you're making.

MISSIONS

Each unit ends with **three tasks** that you'll complete as your final Mission.

STEP 1: build your script

To get ready for spoken practice with other people, you'll build 'me-specific' scripts with the language you need to talk about your life. These scripts make sure you're learning useful Spanish phrases that are truly relevant to you.

STEP 2: speak Spanish with other people ... *online*.

Speaking from day one is the best way I've found to quickly reach fluency. I'll help you implement this strategy, no matter where you live, with the missions you'll complete as part of the language-hacking community.

You'll record yourself speaking your scripts aloud in Spanish and upload them to the community, where you'll get feedback from other learners and keep the conversation going. This is the best practice you can get – aside from one-to-one conversations with a native speaker. By speaking in front of others you'll become more confident using Spanish in the real world.

STEP 3: learn from other learners

When you share your missions with other learners, you'll get more comfortable speaking Spanish – and more importantly, you'll get comfortable speaking the imperfect beginner's Spanish that everyone must use on the road to fluency. You'll gain insight into how conversations flow in Spanish, and you'll learn where the 'expression gaps' are in your scripts that you need to fill to expand your conversation skills.

In other words, you'll have everything you need to genuinely start having conversations with other people in Spanish. After all, isn't that the point?

Let's get started.

WHAT YOU'LL FIND ONLINE

Go to www.teachyourself.com/languagehacking to:

- Submit your missions
- Download or stream the course audio
- Find an up-to-date list of the best free online resources to support your learning
- Discover additional materials to help you on your learning journey
- Find out more about #LanguageHacking and Benny Lewis.

Check back frequently as we add new language hacking features.

THE LANGUAGE HACKER CONTRACT

In this course you will:

- ❖ **get shortcuts (#languagehacks)** to learn a new language *rápidamente*
- ❖ **learn the words and las frases** you need to have real conversations immediately
- ❖ **gain the confidence** to start speaking *español* from day one
- ❖ **have access** to like-minded language learners.

That's my side of the bargain. It's what I'm giving you.

Now here's your side of the contract. I recommend you read it every day so it embeds in your memory and becomes part of who you are.

I will speak Spanish today and every day – if only a little. It will feel awkward and uncomfortable at times. And that's okay.

I will accept that the only way to speak perfectly is to first make mistakes. The only way to overcome my fear is to face it. The only thing preventing me from speaking Spanish is ... not speaking Spanish.

I will embrace my inner Tarzan. I will say things in Spanish like 'I Benny. Me writer. I Ireland.' I'll do this because I'm still learning, and because I don't take myself too seriously. I will communicate effectively instead of perfectly. Over time, I will make massive leaps.

I will build 'me-specific' scripts – mini monologues about myself. I will memorize these scripts and rely on them whenever I'm asked questions. I will discover time and time again that I can manage the most common situations I come across in a new language. I will quickly feel my confidence build as I equip myself with the language I need.

I will speak at every opportunity and be an active participant in the language hacking community. I will learn from giving and getting feedback.

I will build my skills, day by day, piece by piece.

I will learn smarter. I will be self-sufficient. I will make learning Spanish part of my daily routine. I will become fluent faster than I ever imagined possible.

I am a language hacker.

Sign here: _____


Date: _____

PRONUNCIATION GUIDE

Spanish is a phonetic language, which means that every single letter, or particular letter combination follows the same rule all the time.

Most letters are pronounced as you would expect them to be, but here is a quick overview of some key differences to keep in mind. Try to use the native recordings provided to train your ear and tongue to the sounds!

CONSONANTS

 **00.01** Most consonants in Spanish are similar to those in English, but here are some exceptions.

Sound	Explanation	Examples
b or v	Similar to 'b', said with lips closer to your teeth	<u>B</u> arcelona, <u>V</u> alencia
c (before 'e' or 'i') or z	's' sound in most of Latin America, 'th' (as in 'three') in Spain	<u>c</u> ero, az <u>u</u> l
c (before 'a' or 'o' or 'u')	'k' sound, like in 'can'	<u>c</u> on, <u>c</u> asa, <u>c</u> omo
g (before 'e' or 'i') or j	'h' sound in most of Latin America, guttural sound like 'ch' in Scottish 'loch' in Spain	<u>g</u> eneral, <u>J</u> avier
g (before 'a' or 'o' or 'u')	'g' sound, like in 'go'	agu <u>a</u> , <u>g</u> ol
h	silent	<u>h</u> otel, <u>h</u> e
ñ	'ny' sound, like in 'canyon'	Españ <u>a</u> , bañ <u>o</u>
qu	'k' sound, like in kilo	<u>q</u> ué, <u>q</u> uímica
r	a sound made by tapping the roof of your mouth with your tongue, like half way between an 'l' and a 'd'	art <u>is</u> ta, Ir <u>l</u> anda, ca <u>r</u> o

VOWELS

🔊 00.02 Here are all the vowel sounds you'll hear in Spanish.

Sound	Explanation	Examples
a	'ah' sound, like in 'apple'	ca <u>s</u> a, pa <u>p</u> á
e	'eh-' sound, like the e in 'they' cut short	me, bie <u>n</u>
i	like the 'ee' in free	ami <u>g</u> a, ven <u>i</u> r
o	short 'aw' sound, like in 'pop'	no <u>m</u> bre, po <u>d</u> er
u	'oo' sound, like in 'room'	u <u>n</u> a, u <u>s</u> ted
u in que, qui, gue or gui	silent	a <u>q</u> uí, <u>q</u> u <u>e</u> rer, <u>g</u> uí <u>a</u>

1

TALKING ABOUT ME



Your mission

Imagine this – you’ve just arrived in an exotic Spanish-speaking country. You step up to get your passport checked, and the agent asks you about yourself.

Your mission is to convince the agent to let you through. Be brave and say *hola*. Then have a basic exchange – entirely in Spanish – for 30 seconds.

Be prepared to say **your name, where you’re from, where you live, why you’re coming to the country, and especially why you’re learning Spanish.**

This mission will prepare you for the inevitable questions you’ll be asked in any first conversation you have in Spanish.

Mission prep

- ...❖ Learn basic phrases for talking about yourself: *soy ...*
- ...❖ Create simple sentences to talk about your likes and wants, using *quiero, me gusta*
- ...❖ Develop a conversation strategy: turn the tables by asking, *¿y tú?*
- ...❖ Learn the words for countries, nationalities, professions and interests
- ...❖ Use the connector words *porque, y, pero*.

BUILDING SCRIPTS

Most first conversations in a new language are predictable. As a beginner, this is great news for you! We’re going to start by building your first ‘script’ to help you prepare for what you’ll need to say most, right away. We’ll start slowly and build as we move on.

If you’ve studied Spanish before, the words in this unit may be familiar to you. But we’ll be doing much more than just learning words in each unit: we’re going to start building *scripts*. Once you learn a script, you can customize it to your needs. This will help you build your language so you can use it from the start.



#LANGUAGEHACK

get a head start with words you already know

CONVERSATION 1

The first words you'll use in every any conversation

CULTURE TIP:

at the *cafetería*

In Spanish-speaking countries, the *cafetería* is a place you hang out with friends, hold casual meetings, or sit as long as you like to read a long book.


As a beginner, your first step is building basic introductory conversations.

After an initial greeting, a typical first conversation usually turns towards topics of where you live and what you do.

LEARNING STRATEGY: infer meaning through context

While you may not be able to figure out what a word means in isolation, the words around it give you clues you can combine with what you already know to deduce the meaning. This use of **context** is an essential language-learning strategy.

Let's follow the story of Sarah, a Spanish learner and artist who has just arrived in Madrid to paint the buildings that inspire her and to view the paintings of Velázquez up close. She plans to spend the summer immersing herself in Spanish and decides to attend a Spanish lesson at a local *cafetería*. Today she's meeting her teacher, Pablo, for the first time.

 **01.01** This is a typical introductory conversation – one that you'll have yourself over and over. Listen to the way Sarah asks *¿Y tú?*

Sarah: Hola. Soy Sarah. ¿Y tú?

Pablo: ¡Hola! Soy Pablo. ¿Qué tal?

Sarah: Bien, gracias. ¿Y tú?

Pablo: ¡Muy bien! Así que, ¡háblame de ti!

Sarah: Bueno, soy de los Estados Unidos ...
Pero vivo aquí, en Madrid. Y soy artista. ¿Y tú?

Pablo: Soy de España, ¡por supuesto! Y soy profesor.

When you see or hear new Spanish words for the first time, they are going to seem like random noise. But if you train yourself to look and listen a little closer, you'll realize that there's a lot you can figure out based on the *context* of the conversation and how the words relate to English. The key is to try to notice the language for yourself.

Time to think about the conversation you've just heard! Notice how Spanish sentence structure differs from English. The more you actively think about the different ways Spanish uses word order and expressions, the faster you'll learn.

FIGURE IT OUT

- 1 What do you think *soy* means? _____
- 2 Notice the two phrases used for greeting someone in the conversation. What do you think they mean? Write them out in Spanish.

- 3 Circle the phrase Sarah uses to bounce the question back to Pablo.
- 4 Find the Spanish word that answers each question.

Example: Where is Pablo from? España

- a What is Sarah's job? _____
- b Where is she from? _____
- c Where does Sarah live? _____

You can figure out the answers to all these questions even if you don't know a word of Spanish, thanks to **context**. Pretty cool, huh?

NOTICE

CONVERSATION

STRATEGY: ¿y tú?

If you're uncomfortable doing a lot of talking at first, a trick I like to use is to bounce the question back to the other person, so I can listen for a while. In Spanish, it's easy to do, with a simple **¿y tú?**

PRONUNCIATION:

que as 'keh'

You may be tempted to pronounce this sound as the 'qu' in 'queen', but in Spanish these letters signify a hard 'k' sound, as in 'king'. In the word **que**, a close pronunciation would be to say 'kay', but cut it short – almost like 'keh'.

HACK IT: word chunks

In language learning, it's often best to learn words in chunks rather than understanding each part of every word. **Así que** is a great example. Rather than trying to understand what each word means on its own, focus on the expression as a whole for now. In this case, it just means 'So ...'.

🔊 **01.02** Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 1

Spanish	Meaning
hola, soy ...	hello, I'm ...
¿y tú?	and you?
¿qué tal?	how's it going?
bien, gracias.	fine, thanks.
¡muy bien!	very good!
así que ... ¡háblame de ti!	so ... tell me about yourself!
soy de ...	I'm from ...
... los Estados Unidos.	... the United States.
... España.	... Spain.
vivo aquí, en Madrid.	I live here in Madrid.
soy ...	I'm ...
... artista.	... an artist.
... profesor.	... a teacher.
por supuesto	of course

- 1 What's the word meaning 'very' in Spanish? _____
- 2 The Spanish phrase for 'I'm an artist' doesn't translate word-for-word from English. Which English word does the Spanish phrase omit?

- 3 Complete the Spanish phrase for, 'Tell me about yourself!':
_____ *de ti!*
- 4 Translate these phrases into Spanish:
 - a I am _____
 - b I live in ... _____
 - c And you? _____
 - d I'm from Spain. _____

PRONUNCIATION: y, i and u

The **u** in Spanish is always pronounced like the 'u' in 'fluid'. So *tú* sounds like 'two'.

The Spanish **i** is always pronounced like the 'ee' in 'feel'. And when you see **y** by itself, you'll pronounce it the same way. So *¿y tú?* (and you?) is pronounced 'ee too'.

PRACTICE

Though some of this language may be familiar, you should still say these words out loud to start building muscle memory. This will help you develop your Spanish accent right away.

01.03 Here's some new vocabulary to help you keep building your language script. Listen to the audio and study the table.

Countries	Nationalities	Professions	Interests
Estados Unidos	estadounidense	dentista	yoga
Inglaterra	inglés / inglesa	médico / a	el jogging
Canadá	canadiense	artista	fotografía
Italia	italiano / a	pilota	música
		repcionista	tenis
Australia	australiano / a	programador / a	televisión
Rusia	ruso / a	fotógrafo / a	piano
España	español / a	arquitecto / a	cine
México	mexicano / a	bloguero	idiomas (languages)
Irlanda	irlandés		

PRONUNCIATION: a phonetic language

Yes, *always!*
While English has inconsistent spelling to pronunciation associations (it can be learned 'through tough thorough thought, though' ...), almost every letter in Spanish has a particular sound which is pronounced one way.

SPEAKING: take a risk!

Something I hear all the time from Spanish learners is 'Benny, I've studied Spanish for years, but I still can't speak it!' This happens when you spend all your time reading, listening to, or studying Spanish, but not actually *speaking* it. Whatever you do, don't study Spanish in silence. You have to use the language, even if it feels weird or silly at first. It will only get better with use!

You'll start to notice that sometimes, words are written differently depending on whether the person described is male or female. Masculine words end in *o*, and feminine words end in *a*.

When you come across a new vocab list, don't try to memorize all the words - just the ones you can imagine yourself needing in your own conversations. In fact, as you go through this list, give yourself the pleasure of crossing out with a pencil any words you can't imagine yourself using in the next month or so.

If you don't already have one, find a good Spanish dictionary. This will help you build vocab that's what I call 'me-specific'. As we go along, you'll need to look up your own words that apply to your life to make your script more useful. Let's start now.

- 1 Can you add three more words for each category? Make sure to include words that are specific to you or people close to you.
- 2 Now, answer these questions in Spanish. How do you ...

Example: say your name? Soy _____

- a say where you're from? _____
- b say your profession? _____
- c tell someone what city you live in? _____

Cover up the translations in the phrase list, and see if you can remember what the Spanish expressions mean.

PUT IT TOGETHER

Now let's keep building your script. Using the conversation as a model, as well as the vocab and 'me-specific' words you just looked up, create four sentences about yourself. Write out in Spanish:

- your name
- where you're from
- where you live
- what you do for a living.

There are lots of ways you can practise using Spanish in your community and online. Check out our **Resources** for some suggestions. You'll also find suggestions for good free online dictionaries and apps, as well as learner-friendly ink-and-paper dictionaries.

Throughout this book, I'll help you keep building this script. You'll draw on this again and again as you start having your first conversations in Spanish with actual people.

CONVERSATION 2

Describing your interests

When you talk to someone for the first time, you'll often get a question like, 'So, what do you like to do?' As part of their first conversation, Pablo asks Sarah about her interests.

🔊 01.04 Listen for familiar-sounding words, and see if you can understand the gist of the conversation.

Pablo: Bueno, ¿qué te gusta?

Sarah: Me gusta la pizza, pero no me gusta la pasta. Me gusta la música clásica. Me encanta el chocolate. Pablo, ¿qué te gusta?

Pablo: Me gusta visitar museos y me encanta el fútbol.

There's so much Spanish you already know thanks to **cognates** - words that sound similar in English and Spanish, like *arte*, *familia*, and *televisión*. Many Spanish words sound and mean nearly the same in English. Sometimes they mean different things, but most cognates you'll come across make learning Spanish easier.



FIGURE IT OUT

- 1 What phrase does Pablo use to ask Sarah what she likes?

- 2 Use context to figure out the meaning of the words:
a *pero* _____ b *visitar* _____
- 3 What *doesn't* Sarah like? Highlight the phrase she uses to say what she doesn't like, then write it here. _____
- 4 What things *do* the speakers like? Highlight the two phrases they use to describe the things they like.
- 5 Notice the words that look or sound familiar. Find the Spanish words for the following:
a music _____ c museums _____
b classic _____ d football _____

In Spanish writing, question and exclamation marks appear at the start and end of a sentence, and they change orientation, similar to the way quotation marks and brackets do in English. *¿Sabes? ¡Si!*

GRAMMAR TIP:

me gusta / *me encanta*
me gusta isn't literally 'I like', but closer to 'it pleases me'. You can consider *me gusta* to be a 'chunk' for 'I like' and *me encanta* (it enchants me) to be a chunk for 'I love'.

NOTICE

- 🔊 01.05 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 2

Spanish	Meaning
bueno ... ¿qué te gusta?	so ... what do you like? (what you pleases?)
me gusta ...	I like ... (me it-pleases)
pero ...	but ...
no me gusta ...	I don't like ...
me encanta ...	I love ... (me it-enchants)
visitar	to visit

- 1 How are the Spanish phrases for 'I like' and 'I love' worded differently from English? _____
- 2 Now notice how to say 'I don't like' in Spanish. Based on this, how do you think you'd say, 'I don't love'? _____

PRACTICE

Go back and cover up the translations in the phrase lists for Conversations 1 and 2, and see if you can remember what the Spanish expressions mean.



#LANGUAGEHACK:

get a head start with words you already know

I've already introduced you to a lot of cognates in this unit. Here are some simple tips to help you use them to quickly build up your vocabulary. Can you guess the English meaning of these Spanish cognates?

pizza	televisión	actor
cultura	moderno	diferente
activo	artista	opción

English has borrowed many words from Romance languages, including Spanish, and more recently, Spanish has borrowed many words from English. Sometimes the spelling of these words is the same in both languages, and sometimes there are slight changes.


Luckily, you can follow straightforward patterns to guess when a word is likely to be a (near) cognate in Spanish, so you can use something like the English word you know already. It's a safe bet to guess with cognates when you're talking about ...

Professions, concepts, technical vocabulary or scientific words	<i>piloto, trigonometría, cohesión, organismo</i>
Words ending in -tion in English	<i>admiración, asociación, instrucción, opción, loción</i>
Any nouns that end in -tude, -or, -ist, -nce, -ty in English	<i>altitud, actor, optimista, arrogancia, universidad (with slight spelling alterations)</i>

Expert tip: words that are formal in English are more likely to be similar in Spanish. For instance, if you forget how to say 'country' in Spanish, you could say *nación* instead (from 'nation'). This is a slightly more formal word, but you can use this cognate to get your point across, without needing to learn a new word!

YOUR TURN: use the hack

You'll internalize this #languagehack much better if you try it out yourself now. So let's get you using this technique right away.

- 1  **01.06** Practise pronouncing Spanish cognates. Notice how different they sound from English, and repeat each word to mimic the speaker.

animal
historia

tradición
restaurante

novela
diccionario

- 2 Go back through Conversations 1 and 2 and find five cognates. Write them in the following cheat sheet.

Spanish cognate

artista

English meaning

artist

- 3 What English words can you think of that are likely to be Spanish cognates? Practise *guessing* four new cognates using the rules you've just learned, then use your Spanish dictionary to check your answers. Write down new cognates you discover in the cheat sheet!

Example: democracy → *democracia*

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: *me gusta ... verb + noun*

The sentence structure introduced in this conversation is the verb + noun form. It uses action words (verbs) followed by a person, place or thing (noun) – the same way we do it in English.

Because of that, this sentence structure will be simple for you to learn and use. You'll just need to decide which verb you want to use, followed by the thing you want to talk about. So *Quiero un café* is 'I want a coffee'.

GRAMMAR TIP:

understanding the terminology

In this book, I'll avoid using overly technical grammar terms, but there are a few worth knowing. Here, we talk about *nouns* – people, places and things (like *pasta, estudiante, dentista, España*), and *verbs* – action words (like *soy, vivo, gusta*). These are the building blocks of all sentences.

Example:

quiero un café.
verb + noun

me encanta la música.
verb + noun

no me gusta la pasta.
verb + noun

What things do you like, dislike, or love? Complete the sentences below with nouns from the box. Make the sentences true for you!

la pizza la pasta el café Madrid la televisión

- a *me encanta* _____
- b *no me gusta* _____
- c *me gusta* _____

You'll notice that Spanish sometimes adds 'the' (usually *el* or *la*) before a noun, when we wouldn't use it in English. We'll discuss the differences between these two 'the' words later.

PUT IT TOGETHER

It's time to use this form yourself by talking about your own likes and dislikes.

Use the sentence forms you've just learned as a model to fill in details about your own life. Be sure to:

- Use your dictionary to look up new words that describe yourself.
- Combine verbs with places and things (nouns).
- Create three new sentences about things you like, and two sentences about things you don't like.

○ _____

○ _____

○ _____

○ _____

○ _____

Now read your script over and over again. Try to memorize it too!

CONVERSATION 3

Why are you learning Spanish?

You'll almost definitely get this question when you have your first conversation in Spanish!

One question you'll find yourself answering all the time is simply, 'Why are you learning Spanish?' So let's prepare your answer now.

🔊 **01.07** Pablo wants to know why Sarah is learning Spanish. Pay attention to the way Sarah forms her answer. How does she say 'because'?

CULTURE TIP:

using the informal tú

Spanish has two ways of referring to a single 'you': one is informal, **tú** (with verbs ending in **s** like **aprendes**), and the other is formal, **usted**. For this book, we're sticking with the informal form most of the time, because honestly, that's the form you'll use when you're casually chatting with people your age.

Pablo: Así que, ¿por qué **aprendes** español?

Sarah: Bueno, aprendo español porque ...
quiero hablar un idioma precioso ...
y quiero entender la cultura española.

Quiero vivir y trabajar en España, ¡y creo que la música española es muy interesante!

Pablo: ¿Te gusta la música clásica o la música moderna?

FIGURE IT OUT

1 What words do the speakers use to *ask a question* (why?) and to *give a reason* (because). Circle them, then write them out here.

why? _____ because _____

2 What do you think the following phrases mean in English?

a *la cultura española* _____

b *la música clásica o la música pop* _____

3 Find two cognates in this conversation, then go back and add them to your cognates cheat sheet.

4 What do you think is the difference between *aprendo* and *aprendes*?

NOTICE

🔊 01.08 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 3

Spanish	Meaning
¿por qué aprendes español?	why are you learning Spanish?
aprendo ... porque ...	I'm learning ... (I-learn) because ...
quiero hablar un idioma precioso	I want to speak a beautiful language (a language beautiful)
entender la cultura española	to understand Spanish culture (to-understand the culture Spanish)
vivir y trabajar en España	to live and to work in Spain
creo que ...	I think that ...
la música española es muy interesante	Spanish music is very interesting

VOCAB: why?

because!

The words for 'why' and 'because' are nearly identical: **por qué** (why) and **porque** (because). They're spelled very similarly and pronounced almost identically. It's a two-for-one deal on vocabulary!

PRONUNCIATION: es ...

Why is it **España** (and not 'Spaña')? To make words easier to pronounce, Spanish adds in vowels, like the **e** at the start of words like **espaguetis**, **especial**, and names like **Estefanía**.

CONVERSATION STRATEGY: smooth out your sentences with connector words

Speaking in short, simple sentences doesn't sound very natural, but when you're a beginner in Spanish, it gets the job done.

You can smooth out your Spanish by adding in *connector words* like 'and', 'because' and 'but' to connect your thoughts to sound more natural:

'I want to learn Spanish *because* I want to learn a beautiful language, *and* I want to understand Spanish culture ...'

1 Which words in Spanish correspond to these English connector words?

- a** and _____ **c** but _____
b because _____ **d** or _____

2 Notice that the Spanish word for 'is' looks very similar to the English word. Use this word to say the following in Spanish:

a Spain is interesting. _____

b The culture is different here. _____ *diferente* _____.

3 Write the following in Spanish, and notice the similarity in the way the words are formed:

a I'm learning _____

c I think _____

b I want _____

d I live _____

4 Based on this, what do you think it means when a verb ends in o (like *vivo*) or oy (like *soy*)? (Hint: Who's the *subject*?) _____

5 Which four verbs follow the expression *quiero*? Highlight them.

We call this the **dictionary form** because it's the way the verb looks in a dictionary. You can also think of it as the 'to-form' (*hablar* is 'to speak'), and language buffs call it the 'infinitive'. This form will always end in *-ar*, *-er* or *-ir* in Spanish.

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: 'I want to ...' combining two verbs

In Conversation 3, you saw a new sentence structure that combines two forms of Spanish verbs – the 'I form' and the 'dictionary form'.

Here are two set phrases using these two verb types, which will help you avoid more complicated phrases.

Quiero + verb (dictionary form) **Me gusta + verb** (dictionary form)

'I want' + **to (do something)** 'I like' (It pleases me) + **to (do something)**

In English, you might want to say 'I like *visiting* Spain' instead of 'I like to visit Spain'. In Spanish, both are the same.

Examples:

quiero hablar (I want to speak)

me gusta visitar (I like to visit – 'visiting pleases me')

You can use these combinations in nearly endless ways.

🔊 01.09 Listen to the audio and study the table. Pay careful attention to the pronunciation of the words – especially their endings.

Common verbs

Dictionary form	Meaning	Yo form	Meaning
querer	to want	quiero	I want
esperar	to hope	espero	I hope
odiar	to hate	odio	I hate
vivir	to live	vivo	I live
pensar	to think	pienso	I think
hablar	to speak	hablo	I speak
aprender	to learn	aprendo	I learn
estudiar	to study	estudio	I study
viajar	to travel	viajo	I travel
visitar	to visit	visito	I visit
entender	to understand	entiendo	I understand
ayudar	to help	ayudo	I help

GRAMMAR TIP:

gustar and *encantar*
Two verbs you've seen, *gustar* and *encantar*, are not included here. They actually use the 'it form' of the verb (which is why *me gusta* and *te encanta* end in -a instead of -o).

PRACTICE

1 How you would say the following sentences in Spanish?

- a I love to speak Spanish. _____
- b I hate to visit museums. _____
- c I like to learn languages. _____
- d I want to visit Spain. _____

2 Now practise the two sentence structures you've just learned, and combine them with the correct usage of *y*, *pero*, *o* and *porque*. Fill in the blanks.

- a Talk about your two favourite foods (verb + noun structure).
Me gusta _____ y me gusta _____.

Whenever you learn new phrases, you should always supplement them with **me-specific language** you look up yourself, to really make them your own.

Remember that Spanish would include *el / la* before the nouns here, but don't worry about getting this right for now. If you're unsure, just **guess** *el*, and you have a 50/50 chance of being right!

b Say one thing you like and one thing you don't (verb + noun structure).

Me gusta _____, _____ no me gusta _____.

c Say one thing you like and one thing you don't (verb + verb structure).

Me gusta _____, _____ no me gusta _____.

d How would you begin to explain why you like something?

Me gusta _____ ...

PUT IT TOGETHER

Now it's time to practise using the sentence structure yourself!

If you're planning to visit a Spanish-speaking country, one of your sentences should share why you're visiting or what you like about the country!

1 Create four sentences in Spanish that combine the 'I + verb' + dictionary-form of verbs to say things that are true for you. Look up new words you need in your dictionary.

Example: Espero entender español. (I hope to understand Spanish.)

Quiero aprender español porque ...

COMPLETING UNIT 1

Check your understanding

🔊 01.10 Go back and reread the conversations. Then when you're feeling confident:

- 🔊 listen to the audio rehearsal, which will ask you questions in Spanish
- 🔊 pause or replay the audio as often as you need to understand the questions
- 🔊 repeat after the speaker until the pronunciation feels and sounds natural to you
- 🔊 answer the questions in Spanish (in complete sentences).

LEARNING STRATEGY:

active listening

When you do a listening exercise, make sure you **actively pay attention** to the audio. A common mistake is to listen to Spanish audio 'in the background', thinking it will still 'sink in'. The truth is, there's a huge difference between hearing a language and listening **to** a language. Make sure 100% of your attention is on the audio while it plays!

Show what you know ...

Here's what you've just learned. Write or say an example in Spanish for each item in the list. Then tick off the ones you know.

- Introduce yourself. ¡Soy Benny!
- Say where you're from.
- Give three Spanish-English cognates.
- Ask the question, 'Why are you learning Spanish?'
- Give a reason why you're learning Spanish, 'Because ...'
- Give the Spanish connector words for 'and' 'so' and 'well'.
- Give a phrase you can use to bounce a question back to someone else.
- Describe your interests using different sentence structures:
 - I like ...
 - I want to ...

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

It's time to complete your mission: convincing the airport agent to let you through the gates, so your Spanish adventure can begin! To do this, you'll need to prepare your answers to the questions you'll most likely be asked.

Please visit www.italki.com/languagehacking



Each unit will build on the previous one, helping you review as you move ahead.

STEP 1: build your script

Start your script with the phrases you learned in this unit, combined with 'me-specific' vocab, to answer common questions about yourself. Be sure to:

- say your name and occupation using *soy*
- say where you're from and where you live using *soy* and *vivo*
- say why you're learning Spanish with *aprendo ... porque ...*
- say why you're visiting Spain using *porque / me gusta / me encanta*
- use connector words along the way to sound a bit more fluent!

Write down your script, then repeat it until you feel confident.

STEP 2: real language hackers speak from day one ... online

If you're feeling good about your script, it's time to complete your mission and share a recording of you speaking your script with the community. So, go online, find the mission for Unit 1 and give it your best shot.

STEP 3: learn from other learners

How well can you understand someone else's introduction? After you've uploaded your own clip, check out what the other people in the community have to say about themselves. Would you let them past security? **Your task is to ask a follow-up question in Spanish to at least three different people.**

STEP 4: reflect on what you've learned

What did you find easy or difficult about this unit? Did you learn any new words or phrases in the community space? After every script you write or conversation you have, you'll gain a lot of insight for what 'gaps' you need to fill in your script. Always write them down!

You'll find some bonus missions, too, for serious Spanish hacking! Go to <http://www.teachyourself.com/languagehacking>

HEY, LANGUAGE HACKER, LOOK AT YOU GO!

You've only just started on the new path to #languagehacking, and you've already learned so much. You've taken the first crucial steps, and started to interact with others using Spanish. This is something other students don't do even after years of studying, so you should be truly proud of yourself.

¡Muy bien!

2 ASKING ABOUT YOU



Your mission

Imagine this – your friend brings you to your first *fiesta*. You want to blend in and not rely on English.

Your mission is to trick someone into thinking you speak Spanish for at least 30 seconds.

Be prepared to strike up a conversation and talk about **how long you've been** living in your current location, **what you like to do**, and the **languages you speak** or want to learn. After the 30 seconds have passed, reveal how long you've been learning Spanish and dazzle them! To avoid arousing suspicion, keep the other person talking by asking casual questions to show your interest.

This mission will give you the confidence to initiate conversations with new people.

Mission prep

- Use the question and answer words *desde, desde cuándo*
- Ask and respond to questions using the *tú* form
- Express your opinions with *creo que, prefiero*
- Negate sentences using *no*
- Develop a conversation strategy: using the filler words *bueno, pues, entonces* to create conversational flow
- Pronounce new Spanish sounds (the Spanish *r* and *ñ*).

BUILDING LANGUAGE FOR ASKING QUESTIONS

Let's build on the simple (but effective!) technique of bouncing back a question with *¿y tú?*, and learn to form more specific questions using several new sentence structures.



#LANGUAGEHACK

learn vocab faster with memory hooks

CONVERSATION 1

No matter where you live in the world, there are other Spanish learners nearby who want to practise Spanish with you. You can also find native speakers to help you learn. See our **Resources** online to learn how to connect with other Spanish learners and speakers.

CONVERSATION STRATEGY: anticipate common questions

When you start speaking Spanish, a common conversation topic is language learning itself. It makes sense – if you're learning Spanish, people will ask if you speak other languages. Have your answer prepared!

PRONUNCIATION: the silent *h*

The *h* in Spanish is always silent, similar to how it is in 'hour' or 'honest' in English. Possibly the easiest pronunciation you'll ever learn!

Words you need for asking questions

We'll check back in with Sarah. Just a few days into her stay in Madrid, she decides to attend a regular language learners' meet-up near her house. There, she meets Felipe, a local *madrileño*.

02.01 After the initial introductions, Sarah and Felipe start talking about their language skills. Pay attention to the differences between the way Felipe asks questions and how Sarah answers them.

Felipe: Bueno, Sarah, ¿te gusta vivir aquí en Madrid?

Sarah: ¡Sí, por supuesto! Me encanta.
Aprendo mucho español.

Felipe: ¡Qué bien! ¿Hablas otros idiomas?

Sarah: No, solo hablo inglés y un poco de español. ¿Y tú?

Felipe: ¡Sí! Hablo bien portugués y hablo un poco de ruso.

Sarah: ¿De verdad?

Felipe: ¡Sí, de verdad!

Sarah: Entonces, ¿no hablas inglés?

Felipe: Aún no ... pero espero practicar un poco de inglés aquí hoy.

FIGURE IT OUT

1 Use context to figure out the gist of the conversation and answer the questions.

- a** How many languages does Sarah speak? _____
- b** Does Sarah like living in Madrid? *sí / no* (highlight one)
- c** Does Felipe speak English? *sí / no*

2 Are these statements about the conversation true (*verdadero*) or false (*falso*)?

- a Sarah is not learning Spanish. *verdadero / falso*
- b Felipe speaks Portuguese. *verdadero / falso*
- c Sarah speaks Russian. *verdadero / falso*

3 How do you say, 'yes, that's true' in Spanish? _____

4 How do you make a question negative in Spanish? What word makes the difference between 'do you speak?' and 'don't you speak'? _____

5 How would you say 'Don't you want?' and 'Don't you live?' in Spanish?

- a *quieres* (you want) → _____
- b *vives* (you live) → _____

NOTICE

🔊 02.02 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 1

Spanish	Meaning
¿te gusta vivir aquí?	do you like to live here?
aprendo mucho español	I'm learning a lot of Spanish
¡qué bien!	that's great! (what well!)
¿hablas otros idiomas?	do you speak other languages?
no, solo hablo inglés	I only speak English (only I-speak English)
hablo ...	I speak ...
... un poco de español	... a little bit of Spanish
... bien portugués	... Portuguese well
¿de verdad?	really?
entonces	so
¿no hablas inglés?	don't you speak English?
aún no	not yet (still no)
espero practicar	I hope to practise
aquí hoy	here today

Aquí means 'here'. To remember this, imagine a mother trying to open a locked door, when her child runs up to her with a key, pointing at it and saying '¡Aquí! ¡Aquí! (Here! Here!)'.

Remember - in Spanish, 'I learn Spanish' and 'I am learning Spanish' can be said the same way: *Aprendo español*.

VOCAB: *no* means 'no'!

No in Spanish means both 'no' and 'not'.

- 1 What are the two phrases Felipe uses to describe how well he speaks Russian and Portuguese? Write them here.

- 2 Compare *Solo hablo inglés* with 'I only speak English'. Where does the word *solo* appear? Use the same word order to create these Spanish sentences:

a I only want to speak Spanish. _____

b I only like Spanish. _____

CONVERSATION STRATEGY: filler words


You'll see some occasional 'filler words' used in these conversations. While they don't add meaning to the conversation, you can use 'filler words' while you collect your thoughts, the same way you'd say 'well ...', 'so ...' and 'y'know ...', in English.

In Spanish you'll hear words like **bueno** (good), **pues** (well), **a ver** (let's see) and **entonces** (so) in natural conversations. These don't always translate exactly to English, but when you need to hesitate, you can use these filler words to make your conversation feel more natural!

PRONUNCIATION: questions and answers

Learn questions and answers together. In Spanish, *intonation* can make the difference between whether a phrase is a question or a statement. As in English, Spanish intonation goes upwards for a question, and downwards for an answer.

¿De verdad? ↗ De verdad. ↘ ¿Y tú? ↗ Bien. ↘

- 1  **02.03** Listen to the audio, and use intonation to determine whether you hear a question or a statement. For the first two questions, circle what you hear.

a ¿En Madrid? En Madrid. b ¿Aquí? Aquí.

For the remaining questions, figure out whether you hear a *pregunta* ('question') or a *respuesta* ('reply').

- c *pregunta* / *respuesta* d *pregunta* / *respuesta*
e *pregunta* / *respuesta* f *pregunta* / *respuesta*
g *pregunta* / *respuesta* h *pregunta* / *respuesta*

You'll hear the familiar verbs *vivir* and *hablar* used in a new form in this audio. For now, focus on listening for intonation.

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: answering yes / no questions

Asking and answering yes/no questions in Spanish couldn't be simpler. If you want to give a positive answer to a question (e.g. 'Yes, I do ...' or 'Yes, I am ...'), you'll just need one word: *Sí*.

¿Hablás español? 'Do you speak Spanish?'
Sí, **hablo** español. 'Yes, I do.' / 'Yes, I speak Spanish.'

To make a negative statement, you just have to add a *no* before the verb:

No hablo español. 'I don't speak Spanish.'

Or, since *no* means both 'no' and 'not', you can also say:

No, no hablo español. 'No, I don't.' / 'No, I don't speak Spanish.'

- 1** Practise using question and answer forms. Use the words given in the box to answer the questions first in the affirmative, then in the negative.

como (I eat) trabajo (I work) quiero (I want)

- a** ¿Comes pescado? (Do you eat fish?)

Sí, _____ No, _____

- b** ¿Trabajas en el hospital? (Do you work in the hospital?)

Sí _____ No _____

- c** ¿Quieres venir a la fiesta? (Do you want to come to the party?)

Sí _____ No _____

You can see that 'do' and 'don't' aren't translated in Spanish questions like this. Always keep this in mind so you aren't trying to remember how to say 'I do' when asked ¿Hablás español?

Here's a handy way to remember this word - when I speak (*hablo*), a blow [*ah-bloh*] of air comes out my mouth. (We'll talk more about memory tricks later).

PRACTICE

- 1** Change these statements into questions, then say each one out loud.

a *Vives en Madrid.* _____

b *Hablás portugués.* _____

c *Aprendo español.* _____

2 Now answer each question in the negative form, and say each one out loud.

- a ¿Te gusta la pasta? _____
- b ¿Prefieres la música pop? _____
- c ¿Hablas ruso? _____

3 Fill in the sentences with the missing Spanish word(s).

- a I only speak English. _____ hablo inglés.
- b I'm learning a little bit of Russian.
_____ ruso.
- c I want to speak a lot of Spanish, of course!
Quiero hablar _____ español, ¡ _____!
- d Really! I don't speak Portuguese!
¡ _____! ¡ _____ hablo _____!
- e Today, I'm studying Spanish! _____, _____ español!

PUT IT TOGETHER

1 You should always be learning new vocab on your own! Use your dictionary to look up the Spanish translations for the languages given. Then add, in Spanish, two more languages that you would like to learn.

- a German _____
- b French _____
- c Chinese _____
- d _____
- e _____

2 Time to create sentences that are true for you! How would you answer the questions? If you speak other languages, include whether you speak them 'well' or 'a little bit', and if you want to learn other languages, say which ones. Write out your answers in Spanish. Then repeat them out loud.

- a ¿Hablas otros idiomas?
Sí, hablo _____.
No, _____ hablo _____.
- b ¿Quieres aprender otros idiomas?
Sí, quiero _____.
No, _____ quiero _____.



#LANGUAGEHACK: learn vocab faster with memory hooks

You may think you don't have the memory to learn lots of new words. But you absolutely can! The trick I use for remembering vocab is **mnemonics**, or memory hooks. A mnemonic is a learning tool that helps you remember a lot more words and phrases. I've already given you some mnemonics so far. Remember:

- ❖ 'a blow' of air happening when *hablo* (I speak)
- ❖ the story about the child saying '*¡Aquí! ¡Aquí!*'.

These associations act like glue for your memory. The key to a good mnemonic is to think about an image or sound that connects the word to its meaning, then try to make it silly, dramatic, or shocking – make it memorable!

The easiest way to do this is through **sound or image association**. Simply say the Spanish word out loud until you can think of an English word that sounds like it. (It may even be similar in meaning.) Then you can attach a powerful (silly, weird or funny) image to it – anything that helps.

Example:

- ❖ the word *el sol*, for 'sun' is pronounced similarly to 'sole' in English. You could imagine falling asleep on the beach and waking up with sunburn on the soles of your feet – where you forgot to put sunscreen!
- ❖ the word for 'sea', *el mar*, sounds like 'marine' or sea life. You might also create the image of a submarine in your mind
- ❖ to remember that *poco* means 'little', you might imagine the silly image of yourself hopping up and down on a little pogo stick.

YOUR TURN: use the hack

🔊 **02.04** Listen to the audio to hear the pronunciation of each word. Repeat the words to mimic the speakers. Then use sound or image association to create your own mnemonic for each.

- a *la luz* = 'light' _____
- b *barato* = 'cheap' _____
- c *caro* = 'expensive' _____
- d *la cosa* = 'thing' _____
- e *el libro* = 'book' _____

I'll occasionally hint at tricks you can use to remember new vocab. For now, you should get used to creating new mnemonics yourself!

CONVERSATION 2

How long have you been learning Spanish?

PRONUNCIATION: ñ (tilde)

The squiggly line above the 'n' (called a *tilde*) indicates a slightly different pronunciation. When you see this, add a 'y' sound after the n. For example, *año* is pronounced 'an-yo' and *español* is pronounced 'es-pan-yol'.

VOCAB: -mente for '-ly'

In Spanish, the ending *-mente* corresponds to the English '-ly' as in 'happily' (*felizmente*) or 'easily' (*fácilmente*). On its own, *feliz* simply means 'happy' and *fácil* simply means '... well, I'll let you figure that out! Some more examples:

perfecto/a → *perfectamente*,
rápido/a → *rápidamente*

One great thing about studying foreign languages is the **new expressions** you'll encounter. This one translates to 'It is eaten bread', in the sense of 'It's as easy as pie'. Don't try to translate these phrases literally, but look for the fun equivalents!

Another 'first question' you can expect when you speak Spanish with someone new is 'How long have you been learning Spanish?' Let's prepare your response to that question now.

🔊 **02.05** Listen to the conversation between Sarah and Felipe. Try to identify the Spanish phrase for 'how long?'

Felipe: ¿Desde cuándo **aprendes español**?

Sarah: Aprendo español desde hace dos semanas.

Felipe: ¿Solo dos semanas? ¡Hablas muy bien!

Sarah: No, no es verdad ... pero gracias.

Felipe: De nada. ¡Me encanta aprender idiomas!

Sarah: ¡Interesante! ¿Cuántos idiomas quieres aprender, Felipe?

Felipe: Pues, algún día espero aprender tres idiomas: inglés, japonés, y árabe. **Especialmente** japonés, porque me gusta la cultura japonesa.

Sarah: ¡Uf! El japonés es muy difícil.

Felipe: ¡Qué va! ¡**Es pan comido!**

FIGURE IT OUT

1 Use context, along with what you learned in Unit 1, to figure out:

a How long has Sarah been learning Spanish? Highlight the relevant words in the conversation.

one day two weeks only two weeks

b How many languages does Felipe hope to learn? _____

c Which language(s) does Felipe most want to learn and why?

2 Now circle the Spanish forms of the following phrases.
(Hint: you should recognize them from Conversation 1.)

- a only b You speak Spanish very well! c true

3 What is the meaning of the word *especialmente*? And *fácil*?

4 Write out the Spanish phrases used in Conversation 2 to:

- a say 'you're welcome' _____
- b ask how long ('since when')? _____
- c ask 'how many' _____

NOTICE

🔊 02.06 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 2

Spanish	Meaning
desde cuándo ...	how long ... (since when)
desde hace dos semanas	for two weeks (since ago two weeks)
no es verdad	it's not true
gracias	thank you
de nada	you're welcome (of nothing)
cuántos	how many
pues ...	well ...
algún día	some day
... es muy difícil	... is very difficult

GRAMMAR TIP:

word order

The word order in Spanish can be different from what you're used to. But don't worry! If you use slightly incorrect word order, people will still understand you. As you read through this book, take notice of the **word-for-word translations** in brackets, and you'll start to get a feel for how the language works.

If the literal translation of *de nada* (of nothing), seems weird for 'you're welcome', think about the expression, 'think nothing of it!' in English.

1 Highlight the phrase that means 'for how long' in the phrase list.

What does the word *cuándo* mean on its own? _____

2 Write out details about the conversation in Spanish:

- a** How long has Sarah been learning Spanish?

Sarah aprende _____.

- b** Which languages does Felipe hope to learn?

Felipe espera _____.

3 Notice how the word *es* is used here. How would you say in Spanish:

- a** it's true _____ **b** culture is interesting _____

4 Notice how the speakers form answers to questions starting with *Cuántos* and *Desde cuándo*. Fill in the gaps in the question/answer pairs.

a ¿_____ idiomas aprendes? *Aprendo dos idiomas.*

b ¿Desde cuándo aprendes el idioma? *Aprendo el idioma _____ noviembre.*

c ¿Cuántos idiomas hablas? *Hablo dos _____.*

d ¿_____ hablas el idioma? *Hablo el idioma desde septiembre.*

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: don't be a 'has-been'!

English uses the phrase 'has/have been' in expressions like:

'I **have been** learning Spanish **since** September.'

'I **have been** studying **for** two hours.'

In Spanish, however, learning 'has/have been' isn't necessary – you can convey this using the much simpler *desde* (since) and *desde hace* (for, lit. 'since ago'):

Aprendo español desde septiembre. 'I **am learning** Spanish **since** September.'

Estudio desde hace dos horas. 'I **am studying since ago** two hours.'

Just remember: in situations like this, if you'd say 'for' in English, then add *hace* (ago) in Spanish.

PRACTICE

Here's some new vocab to help you keep adding to your 'me-specific' script.

🔊 02.07 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Numbers (0–10) and time periods

Spanish	Meaning	Spanish	Meaning
un/una	one	un día	a day
dos	two	una semana	a week
tres	three	un mes	a month
cuatro	four	un año	a year
cinco	five		
seis	six		
siete	seven		
ocho	eight		
nueve	nine		
diez	ten		
cero	zero		

VOCAB: *un* and *una* – 'one'

The word for 'one' is usually either *un* or *una*, depending on whether the word is masculine or feminine. (More on this in Unit 3.)

For *semana*, think of the 'same man' you see every week on your favourite show. For *mes*, think of how your brother or friend's room is a mess because he only cleans it once a month. For *año*, think of the word 'annual.'

GRAMMAR TIP: plurals
Just like in English, to make a word plural, you'll usually add an *s* in Spanish. So we can say *dos semanas*, *dos años* and *dos días*. But if the word already ends in an *s*, then add *es* (just like you would in English):
un mes → *dos meses*.

1 Fill in the blanks with the missing Spanish words.

¿_____ días trabajas _____?

How many days are you working here?

2 Translate the following phrases into Spanish.

- a five days _____
- b three years _____
- c eight months _____
- d four weeks _____
- e I have been living in Spain since my birthday (*mi cumpleaños*).

- f I have been learning Spanish for nine weeks.

Cumpleaños looks like compilation of *años*, which is basically what it is, now isn't it? Your birthday marks the compilation of all your total *años* up to now!

- 3** Think of some interesting mnemonics for the following words.
(Remember: focus on the pronunciation, rather than the spelling.)

cuatro cinco siete

PRONUNCIATION EXPLANATION: the Spanish *r*

The Spanish *r* may seem like a tricky aspect of the language, but there's an easy hack to learn it almost instantly. Keep in mind that the Spanish *r* is nothing like the English 'r', and in fact comes from another part of your mouth – it's actually more like **a sound halfway between an English 'l' and 'd'**.

Try this: say 'la, da, la, da, la, da ...' in quick succession. Pay attention to where your tongue is – it should move between the two sounds towards the front of the roof of your mouth. Now say '*calo, cado, calo, cado, calo, cado ...*'. Average them out, and you will be saying something very close to the Spanish *caro* (expensive). Try it!

02.08 Here are some words you've already seen that use the *r* sound. Listen to the audio and repeat, trying your best to mimic the speaker.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| a <i>verdadero</i> (true) | d <i>interesante</i> (interesting) |
| b <i>por</i> (for) | e <i>cultura</i> (culture) |
| c <i>aprendes</i> (you learn) | f <i>practicar</i> (to practise) |

PUT IT TOGETHER

Create a cheat sheet with vocab that's immediately relevant to you. For instance, how do you say your phone number in Spanish?

Numbers and times of year cheat sheet

_____	(your phone number)
_____	(your age)
_____	(your birth month)
_____	(the month you started learning Spanish)
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

1 How old are you? Look up your age and add it to the cheat sheet. Then use *tengo* to say how old you are.

Example: *Tengo veintisiete años.* (I'm 27 years old.)

Tengo _____ años.

2 Use your Spanish dictionary to look up your birth month, as well as the month (or year!) you started learning Spanish. Add them to your cheat sheet. Then, use *desde* to answer the question:

¿Desde cuándo aprendes español?

Example: *Aprendo español desde noviembre.*

Aprendo español _____.

Look up other important numbers in your life – the ages of your children, how many cats you have, whatever is meaningful to you – and add them to your cheat sheet!

3 Someone asks you how long you've been learning Spanish. You answer, but then you want to continue the conversation by asking him or her a question. How would you ask the following questions in Spanish?

a How long have you been living in Spain? (*vives*)

b How long have you been teaching Spanish? (*enseñas*)

4 Now create an entire sentence that's true for you. Respond to the question by saying how many days, weeks, months or years you've been learning Spanish.

¿Desde cuándo aprendes español?

VOCAB: *tengo* (I have)

Occasionally, Spanish will use *tengo* (I have) when we would say 'I am' in English.

For example:

Tengo treinta años.

'I'm 30 years old.' (lit. 'I-have 30 years') or

Tengo suerte! 'I'm lucky!' (lit. 'I-have luck!')

HACK IT:

learn vocab strategically

Remember, you don't need to memorize all of the numbers or other types of vocab in Spanish right away. Start by thinking about what you'll need to say most often, and learn that first. The rest will come with time, and conversation!

CONVERSATION 3

Sharing your opinions

Sarah and Felipe start to discuss how best to learn a new language.

GRAMMAR TIP:

que as 'that'

Here we introduce *que*, which is used as 'that' to connect phrases, such as *Creo que eres español* ('I think that you are Spanish'). This is slightly different to *qué* (with an accent) that you've seen before, which means 'what'.

¡Anda! literally means 'Go! / Walk!' and is a mild exclamation showing disbelief in this example, similar to 'Come on!' in English.

🔊 02.09 Can you understand Sarah's method of learning Spanish?

Felipe: Sarah, ¿qué haces para aprender español?

Sarah: Pues ... estudio vocabulario y voy a clase cada semana.

Felipe: Bueno ... **Creo que** es una mala idea.

Sarah: ¿De verdad?

Felipe: Sí. Para aprender portugués, yo prefiero ir a clase cada día.

Sarah: ¡Anda! ¿Cómo haces eso?

Felipe: A ver ... Voy a clase en casa, por internet. Es fácil, ¿sabes?

Sarah: Muy interesante. ¡Debo hacer eso! Y ... ¿te gusta leer?

Felipe: ¡Sí! Tengo muchos libros. ¡Eso ayuda!


Sarah: Sí, es verdad. ¡De acuerdo!



FIGURE IT OUT

- 1 What does *qué haces* mean? _____
- 2 Find the phrases meaning 'every week' and 'every day' and highlight them.
- 3 Answer these two questions in Spanish.
 - a How often does Sarah have a Spanish class? _____
 - b How often does Felipe have a Portuguese class? _____
- 4 Find and circle:
 - a at least three cognates or near cognates in the conversation
 - b three uses of 'it's'
- 5 *¿Verdadero o falso?* Select the correct answer.
 - a Felipe prefers to have his Portuguese classes at home, on the Internet. *verdadero / falso*
 - b Felipe thinks it's a good idea to go to class every week. *verdadero / falso*
 - c Sarah studies vocabulary to learn Spanish. *verdadero / falso*
 - d Felipe thinks reading books is a bad idea. *verdadero / falso*

Spanish words about political, technical and scientific topics tend to be similar to their English counterparts. Because of that, you are actually even more likely to come across familiar words in complex conversations than you are in simple conversations!



NOTICE

🔊 02.10 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 3

Spanish	Meaning
¿qué haces ...	what are you doing ...?
... para aprender español?	... to learn Spanish? (for to-learn Spanish)
estudio vocabulario	I study vocabulary
voy a clase cada semana	I go to class every week
creo que ...	I think that ...
es una mala idea	it's a bad idea
yo prefiero ir	I prefer to go
¿cómo haces eso?	how do you do that?
en casa, por internet	at home, on the Internet
es fácil, ¿sabes?	it's easy, you know?
¡debo hacer eso!	I should do that!
¿te gusta leer?	do you like to read?
tengo muchos libros	I've a lot of books
¡eso ayuda!	that helps!
¡de acuerdo!	OK!

Since you've already learned the word **no**, you've practically doubled your vocabulary! Imagine you want to say to your Spanish partner, 'this is hard', but you haven't learned the word 'hard' yet. You can simply say it's 'not easy'. **No es fácil.**

VOCAB: **debo**

(I should)

Debo will always be followed immediately by another 'dictionary form' verb:

Debo comer bien.

'I should eat well.' or

Debo estudiar más vocabulario.

'I should study more vocabulary.'

HACK IT: **word chunks**

Here's another phrase you should learn as a 'word chunk'. Memorize it as a set expression that means 'that helps', even if you don't understand each individual word right now.

1 There's one new question word and three new filler words introduced in the phrase list. Circle them, then write them here in Spanish.

a How? _____ **c** ah, well ... _____

b well ... _____ **d** let's see ... _____

2 Write out the phrases the speakers use to give their opinions.

a I think that _____ **c** That helps! _____

b I prefer _____ **d** I should _____

VOCAB: how often?

There are several ways to imply repetition in Spanish.

You can use *cada* (each) and *todos los / todas las* (every):

Examples: *cada día* (each day) *todas las horas* (every hour)

You can also use any number + *veces* (times) to describe 'how often':

Examples: *una vez, dos veces, muchas veces*

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: verb forms

In Conversation 3, you met a lot of new verbs used in different ways. Now let's see how to change them into different forms.

Creating *yo* (I) form and *tú* (you) form verbs

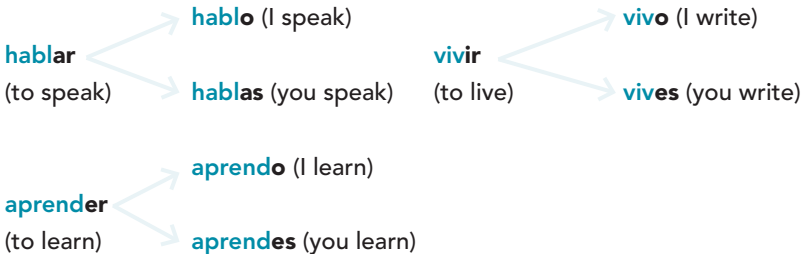
Here's how to figure out the *yo* and *tú* forms of most verbs:

Step 1: **remove the ending** from the dictionary form (*-ar/-er/-ir*)

Step 2: for the *yo* (I) form, **add -o**

For the *tú* (you) form, **add -as** to *-ar* verbs, **or -es** to *-er/-ir* verbs

Examples:



Yo and tú

You'll notice that the words *yo* (I) and *tú* (you) don't actually come up that much in Spanish. Most of the time, these words aren't necessary because they are implied by the spelling of the verb forms: *aprendo* (I learn), *aprendes* (you learn). Pretty handy, huh?

You will see *yo* and *tú* included sometimes to add emphasis, as in *yo prefiero* for 'I prefer'.

Changing a verb from its dictionary form - like 'to learn' (*aprender*) - to other forms like 'I learn' (*aprendo*) or 'you learn' (*aprendes*), is what language teachers typically refer to as conjugating the verb.

PRACTICE

GRAMMAR TIP: boost your vocab – add an o! Trabajo (I work) can also be used as a noun meaning ‘work’ or ‘job’. In fact, there are many times when you can change the ending of a verb you know to create a related noun, just by adding an -o. For example:

••• recuerdo = ‘I remember / a memory’
Recuerdo esa película. Mi accidente de coche no es un buen recuerdo.

••• pago = ‘I pay’ / ‘a payment’
Yo pago la cena hoy. Tengo que hacer ese pago mañana.

••• juego = ‘I play’ / ‘a game’
Juego al fútbol. No me gusta ese juego.

••• intento = ‘I try’ / ‘an attempt’
Intento hacer este ejercicio. Tienes solo dos intentos más.

1 Complete the table with the yo and tú forms for each verb.

Dictionary form	yo form	tú form
escribir (to write)	escribo	escribes
estudiar (to study)		
trabajar (to work)	trabajo	
creer (to believe or think)		
leer (to read)		
decidir (to decide)		

2 Now fill in the blanks with the correct forms.

- a You live here in Madrid, right? _____ aquí en Madrid, ¿no?
- b I hope to speak a lot of Spanish. _____ hablar mucho español.
- c I’m studying Russian. _____ ruso.
- d I’m practising a lot of Spanish. _____ mucho español.
- e Are you reading Don Quixote? ¿ _____ Don Quijote?

3 Fill in the blanks with the missing word(s) in Spanish:

- a I love **living** in Spain. Me encanta _____ en España.
- b I **read** my **book** at home. _____ mi _____ en casa.
- c I **work** every **day**. _____ cada _____.
- d I **prefer** to learn **every week**. Yo _____ aprender _____ las _____.
- e I think that **you study** in class. _____ que _____ en clase.

4 Now use what you know to translate these full sentences to Spanish.

a I prefer to speak Spanish. _____

b You should eat here. _____

c You know that I've been learning Spanish for two weeks.

d I think that Spanish is easy! _____

PUT IT TOGETHER

It's time for you to create sentences about yourself in Spanish! Use what you've just learned, along with any new 'me-specific' vocab you've looked up, to write four sentences about yourself.

❖ Use *aprendo* to say something you are learning.

❖ Use *espero* to say something you hope to do.

❖ Use *debo* to tell something you should do.

❖ Use *creo que* to express an opinion.

○ _____

○ _____

○ _____

○ _____


○ _____

○ _____

○ _____

COMPLETING UNIT 2

Check your understanding

 **02.11** Go back and reread the conversations. When you're feeling confident:

- listen to the audio rehearsal, which will ask questions in Spanish
- pause or replay the audio as often as you need to understand the questions
- repeat after the speaker until the pronunciation feels and sounds natural to you
- answer the questions in Spanish (in complete sentences).

Show what you know ...

Here's what you've just learned. Write or say an example for each item in the list. Then tick off the ones you know.

- Ask a yes or no question. *¿Vives aquí en Madrid?*
- Create *yo* and *tú* verb forms (E.g. *aprender*).
- Use the opinion phrases, 'I think that' and 'I prefer'.
- Ask the question, 'How long have you been learning Spanish?'
- Say how long you've been learning Spanish.
- Say what other languages you speak or want to learn.
- Negate a sentence using *no* (E.g. *Me gusta viajar*).
- Give three filler words.
- Pronounce the Spanish *r* and *ñ*:
 - ¿Estudias español?*
 - ¡Sí! ¡Me encanta la cultura!*

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION



It's time to complete your mission: fool someone into thinking you speak Spanish for at least 30 seconds. To do this, you'll need to prepare to initiate a conversation by asking questions and replying with your own answers.

Please visit www.italki.com/languagehacking

STEP 1: build your script

Keep building your script by writing out some 'me-specific' sentences along with some common questions you might ask someone else. Be sure to:

- ask a question using *¿Desde cuándo?*
- ask a question using *¿Qué te gusta?* or *¿Qué haces?*
- say whether or not you speak other languages and how well you speak them
- say how you've been learning Spanish
- say what other languages you want / hope to learn
- say how long you've been learning Spanish using *desde* (*hace*).

Write down your script, then repeat it until you feel confident.

STEP 2: all the cool kids are doing it ... online

You've put the time into preparing your script, now it's time to complete your mission and share your recording with the community. Go online to find the mission for Unit 2, and use the Spanish you've learned right now!

Momentum is a powerful tool. Once you get started, it's so much easier to keep going.

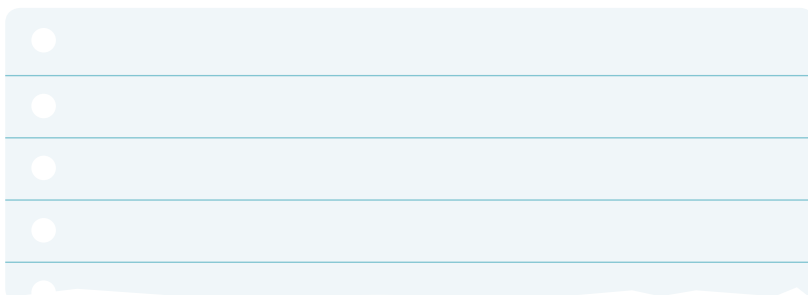
STEP 3: learn from other learners

How well can you understand someone else's script? **Your task is to watch or listen to at least two clips uploaded by other learners.**

How long have they been learning Spanish? Do they speak any other languages? Leave a comment in Spanish saying which words you were able to understand, and answer a question they ask at the end of their video. Then ask them one of the questions you've prepared.

STEP 4: reflect on what you've learned

What new phrases did you learn in the online community? Always write them down!



HEY, LANGUAGE HACKER, DO YOU REALIZE HOW MUCH YOU CAN ALREADY SAY?

After only two missions, you've learned so many words and phrases you can use in real conversations. Don't forget that you can mix and match words and sentences to create endless combinations. Get creative!

In the next few units, you'll learn more about how to have conversations in Spanish – even if you have a limited vocabulary or haven't been learning for very long.

Es fácil, ¿sabes?

3 SOLVING COMMUNICATION PROBLEMS



Your mission

Imagine this – you’re having a great time at your *fiesta* when someone decides it’s time to play a party game – describe something without saying the word itself!

Your mission is to use your limited language and win the game. Be prepared to use ‘Tarzan Spanish’ and other conversation strategies to describe a person, place or thing of your choosing in Spanish.

This mission will help you to overcome the fear of imperfection and show you how with just a few words and a powerful technique, you can make yourself understood.

Mission prep

- Use phrases for meeting new people: *¿Cómo estás?, mucho gusto, ¿Cómo te llamas?*
- Use survival phrases to ask for help with your Spanish: *más lento, lo siento ... ¿Puedes repetir eso?*
- Make direct requests: *Dime, ¿Puedes ayudarme?*
- Talk about what you have and what you need with *tengo* and *necesito*
- Develop a new conversation strategy: use Tarzan Spanish.

BUILDING LANGUAGE FOR MEETING SOMEONE NEW

Practising your Spanish with a language partner, tutor or teacher online, especially when you don’t live in a Spanish-speaking country, is one of the most effective (and affordable) ways to learn more Spanish in a shorter amount of time.

You can do this right away, even if you don’t know many phrases yet. In this unit you’ll learn strategic survival phrases you can use whenever there’s something you don’t understand, and you’ll use ‘Tarzan Spanish’ to communicate with limited language or grammar. Strategies like these help you become comfortable making mistakes when speaking, and help you have meaningful conversations despite being a beginner.



#LANGUAGEHACK

power-learn word genders with the word-endings trick

It's easy to have conversations with other Spanish speakers right through your computer! I've done this for all the languages I've learned. These days I schedule online chats from home to maintain my strongest languages, including Spanish. See our Resources to learn how.

PRONUNCIATION: // – 'the double l'

The double-l sound in Spanish sounds different depending on the country you're in: 'j' (as in 'jam') in Colombia, 'sh' (as in 'shop') in Argentina. The easiest sound to use for many is 'y' (as in 'yes'), and you'll be widely understood if you say // this way. Replay the audio from Conversation 1 to listen more closely to the // pronunciation.

CULTURE TIP: *encantado* or *mucho gusto*?

Spanish speakers use different expressions around the world. In Spain, *encantado/a* is another way to say 'nice to meet you' (literally 'enchanted', which you'll recognize from *me encanta*), but in most other places they say *mucho gusto*, which literally means 'much pleasure'.

CONVERSATION 1

Having an online chat

Sarah has decided to take Felipe's advice and have her first online conversation with Antonio, her new Spanish teacher. Since this is Sarah's first time meeting Antonio, she needs to introduce herself.

🔊 03.01 How does Antonio greet Sarah, and what does she say in response?

Antonio: ¡Hola! ¿Cómo estás?

Sarah: ¡Hola! ¡Estoy muy bien! ¿Cómo te llamas?

Antonio: Me llamo Antonio. ¿Y tú?

Sarah: Me llamo Sarah. ¡Muchas gracias por enseñarme español!

Antonio: De nada. No hay problema. ¡Tienes un nombre bonito! **Mucho gusto**, Sarah.

Sarah: Gracias, muy amable. Mucho gusto.

Antonio: Así que, ¿dónde estás hoy?

Sarah: Ehhhh ... Más lento, por favor.

Antonio: Hoy, ¿dónde estás?

Sarah: Ah, sí. Ahora estoy en Madrid.

FIGURE IT OUT

1 Use context to figure out the gist of the conversation. Highlight the sentences in which:

- a Sarah asks Antonio to speak more slowly.
- b Sarah thanks Antonio for teaching her Spanish.
- c Antonio asks where Sarah is today.

2 How do you say the following in Spanish?

- a thank you _____ c please _____
- b you're welcome _____

3 What do you think the following phrases mean in English?

- a *no hay problema* _____
- b *¿Cómo te llamas?* _____

4 Can you guess the meaning of the question Antonio asks at the end of the conversation? _____

NOTICE

🔊 03.02 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 1

Spanish	Meaning
¿cómo estás?	how are you?
estoy muy bien	I'm very well
¿cómo te llamas?	what's your name? (how yourself you-call?)
me llamo ...	my name is ... (myself I-call)
muchas gracias	thank you very much (many thanks)
... por enseñarme español	... for teaching me Spanish! (for to-teach-me Spanish)
de nada	you're welcome (of nothing)
no hay problema	no problem (no there-is problem)
tienes ...	you have ...
... un nombre bonito!	... a pretty name! (a name pretty)
muy amable	that's nice (very nice)
mucho gusto	nice to meet you (much pleasure)
¿dónde estás hoy?	where are you today?
¿más lento, por favor?	slower, please?
ahora	now

¿Cómo te llamas?
doesn't translate literally as 'What's your name', but is more like 'How do you call yourself?'

Despite what you may have heard in films or on TV, 'no problema' is not a Spanish phrase. The correct phrase here is *no hay problema*, 'there isn't a problem'. Another common expression in Spain is *no pasa nada*, which means 'don't worry about it' (literally, 'nothing's happening'). You could also say *está bien* (literally 'it's well').

VOCAB: *más lento* – 'more slowly' (slower)

Another word you might hear is *despacio*, which means 'slowly'. Should you ask someone to 'speak slower' (*hablar más lento*) or 'speak more slowly' (*hablar más despacio*)?

Technically, the second one is correct, but as in English, many Spanish speakers don't stick to the rules!

1 What phrase can you use when someone is speaking too fast?

2 How do you say the following in Spanish?

a Nice to meet you _____ b I'm very well! _____

c I'm in London now (London = *Londres*) _____

3 Write the English meaning of the Spanish verb forms:

a *estoy* _____ b *tienes* _____ c *estás* _____ d *me llamo* _____

4 Find the following related words, and write them out in pairs:

a How are you? _____ c now _____

b Where are you? _____ d today _____

5 Look again at the phrase list, and replay the audio. Listen and repeat after the speaker to check your pronunciation of:

gracias enseñarme Madrid me llamo por favor

VOCAB: the difference between *ser* and *estar*

There are some situations when you can use either *ser* or *estar*, and it would imply different things. For instance, if I say, *eres guapo* (you're handsome), it means that you're normally handsome – you roll out of bed looking like a film star – lucky you! But if you say, *estás guapo* (you're handsome), it means that *right now* you look very dashing – because of a nice suit, or new haircut (though normally, you tend to only hear yourself described as *guapo* by your aunt, for some reason).

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: *soy* vs. *estoy*

You've probably noticed that there are two different ways of saying 'I am' in Spanish. Spanish uses the different verbs *ser* and *estar* to express different ways of being, but both are translated as 'to be' in English.

••• **Ser** usually refers to a permanent characteristic of someone or something – your personality, where you're from, your job, your natural hair colour, etc.

soy – 'I am' (normally), *eres* – 'you are' (normally)

••• **Estar** usually refers to a temporary state – where you are, how you're feeling, your hair colour if you were to dye it for just one day, etc.

estoy – 'I am' (right now), *estás* – 'you are' (right now)

Examples: <i>soy estudiante</i>	I'm a student
<i>estoy en España</i>	I'm in Spain
<i>eres muy simpático</i>	you're very nice
<i>estás muy ocupado</i>	you're very busy

1 Practise recognizing the use of *ser* and *estar*. Circle the correct verbs.

- a *Estoy/Soy en el supermercado ahora.* (I'm in the supermarket now.)
- b *Estás/Eres muy inteligente.* (You are very intelligent.)
- c *Estoy/Soy triste hoy.* (I'm sad today.)
- d *¿Estás/Eres profesora?* (You're a teacher?)

Ahora is a word you'll use all the time. To remember it, think of *ahora* in terms of a + *hora* 'at hour' (as in 'at this hour').

2 Now use *ser* or *estar* to complete these question/answer pairs.

- a *¿En qué trabajas?* _____ *escritor.*
- b *¿Eres mexicano?* No, _____ *argentino.*
- c *¿Quieres ir a la fiesta?* No puedo. ¡_____ *muy cansado!*
(*cansado* = tired)
- d *¿Dónde estás?* ¡_____ *en el parque!*

LEARNING STRATEGY:

guessing wrong helps you remember more!

When people ask about your work in Spain, they'll normally ask, *¿En qué trabajas?* (In what you work?) or *¿A qué te dedicas?* (To what you dedicate-yourself?). My friend Joseph told me that the father of his Spanish girlfriend once asked him *¿A qué te dedicas?*, to which he replied, 'yes, I am very dedicated to your daughter!' Laughter ensued. Making these mistakes is all a part of the process, and these funny errors make for a powerful memory helper. (As you can imagine, Joseph has never since had trouble remembering that phrase!)

PRACTICE

1 Match the English question with its correct form in Spanish.

- | | | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| a | ¿Qué haces para aprender español? | 1 | What's your name? |
| b | ¿Vives en España? | 2 | Where are you? |
| c | ¿Cómo estudias español? | 3 | Do you live in Spain? |
| d | ¿Cómo te llamas? | 4 | How do you study Spanish? |
| e | ¿Debo hablar más lento? | 5 | What are you doing to learn Spanish? |
| f | ¿Dónde estás? | 6 | Should I speak slower? |

2 The Spanish verb 'to teach', *enseñar*, is a bit tricky. Come up with a creative mnemonic to help you remember it.

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: word order with objects

You saw in Conversation 1 that *me llamo* (my name is) in Spanish is literally 'myself I-call'. It's an example of the object-word sentence structure in use!

When you hear Sarah say words like *me llamo*, *me gusta* or *enseñarme* (to teach me), you probably notice that these phrases use a different word order or structure from how we'd say them in English:

Example: *Me enseñas.* (You teach me lit. 'me you-teach')

As you can see, *me*, *te* and words like *lo* (it) in Spanish tend to come before the verb when it's in non-dictionary form: *¿te gusta?* (lit. 'you it-pleases?').

When the dictionary form is used, these words get attached to the end of the word instead:

Example: *¿Puedes enseñarme español?* (Can you teach me Spanish?)

Here's some new vocab that will help you better understand how to use these sentence structures.

You can also say *Me puedes enseñar* if you like, but the version we use here has the same word order as English and is equally correct.

03.03 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Word order with objects

Verb	Phrase with object	Meaning	Verb + object	Meaning
querer	te quiero	I love you (you I-love)	querer te	to love you
enseñar	me enseñas	you teach me (me you-teach)	enseñar me	to teach me
oír	no puedo oír te	I can't hear you (no I-can to-hear-you)	oír te	to hear you
ver	lo veo	I see it	ver lo	to see it
decir	me dices	you tell me		to tell me
ayudar	quiero ayudarte 	I want to help you		to help you
dar	te doy	I give you		to give you
enviar		I want to send it		to send it
escribir	voy a escribir te	I'm going to write (to) you		to write (to) you
llamar		I call you		to call you
comer		I don't eat it		not to eat it

VOCAB: I 'love' you

There are a lot of ways to describe love in Spanish. The most common is **te quiero**, which literally means 'I want you', but can be used with family and friends as well as romantically. Don't confuse this with **me encanta**, which is used for something you really like, not a person. Then in Latin America, there's **te amo**, which is only used between lovers.

GRAMMAR TIP:

irregular verbs

Some words in this list don't follow the verb form pattern you've learned. For example, you may have seen *quiero* and thought 'Wait, shouldn't that be "quero?"' These are irregular verbs, and Spanish has a lot of them. But I'll point out a #languagehack for learning them quickly in Unit 5.

1 Using the table as a reference, complete the sentences with the correct object word.

a _____ *doy la medicina.* (I'm giving you the medicine.)

b ¿ _____ *ves?* (Do you see it?)

c ¿Puedes _____ *ahora?* (Can you help me now?)

2 Now complete the sentences with the dictionary form of the Spanish verb.

Example: *¿Puedes verme?* (Can you **see** me?)

a *¿Puedes _____?* (Can you **teach** me?)

b *¿Quieres _____?* ((Do) you want to **speak** (to) **me**?)

c *Quiero _____ una cosa* (I want to **tell** (say to) **you** something.)

3 The table is incomplete! Fill in all of the empty spaces using the correct object-sentence structure.

4 Practise creating object-sentences on your own, using the words given.

a *puedo/te/llamar/no* (I can't call you.) _____

b *te/visitar/quiero/no* (I don't want to visit you.) _____

c *lo/poner/aquí/debo* (I should put it here.) _____

d *¿oír/puedes/me?* (Can you hear me?) _____

PUT IT TOGETHER

Use what you've learned in Conversation 1 to write five 'me-specific' sentences. Use *ser* to describe things that are true for you permanently or normally, and *estar* to describe your situation *ahora*. Be sure to include:

- your occupation
- your nationality
- one of your personality traits
- where you are now
- how you're feeling.

CONVERSATION 2

I don't understand ...

As Sarah continues her online class, she starts having trouble understanding what Antonio is saying, so she needs to ask him for help.

🔊 03.04 How does Antonio rephrase his sentences when Sarah asks for help?

Antonio: ¿Por qué dices que 'ahora' estás en Madrid? ¿Vives en **otra** ciudad?

Sarah: Lo siento ... No entiendo.

Antonio: ¿Por qué razón estás en Madrid?

Sarah: Ah, entiendo. ¡Estoy aquí para aprender español!

Antonio: ¿En serio? ¡Muy interesante!

Sarah: ¿Y tú? ¿Dónde estás?

Antonio: Estoy en España, en Valencia. Vivo y trabajo aquí.

Sarah: ¿Puedes repetir, por favor?

Antonio: Vivo en Valencia, así que estoy en España.

Sarah: Un momento ... No puedo **oírte** bien.

Otro/otra can mean both 'other' and 'another', so there's no need to add *un/una* before it.

How can you remember that *oír* means 'to hear'? It's pronounced similarly to 'oh-ear', and when it comes to mnemonics, sound is the key. A good mnemonic might be imagining a person with ears in the shape of the capital letter 'O', or perhaps a single giant ear saying 'OOOOO!' very loudly. The sillier, the better!



FIGURE IT OUT

- 1 *¿Verdadero o falso?* Are the following statements true or false? Select the correct answer, then correct the false statement(s).

Example: Antonio says he is ~~travelling~~ ^{living and working} in Valencia

- a Antonio asks Sarah why she is in Madrid. *verdadero / falso*
b Sarah says she is in Madrid for work. *verdadero / falso*
c Antonio lives in Madrid. *verdadero / falso*
- 2 Several of the Spanish words sound similar to their English counterparts. Can you guess their meaning?

a *interesante* c *razón* e *otra*
b *repetir* d *serio* f *momento*

- 3 What is the meaning of the phrases?

a *¿Vives en otra ciudad?* _____
b *¿Puedes repetir?* _____
c *No puedo oírte bien.* _____

- 4 Find all uses of *estás* (three times), and *estoy* (three times) in the conversation and highlight them.
- 5 Find one word in the conversation that you don't understand and highlight it. Now take a closer look to see if you can infer the word's meaning. Look up the word in a dictionary to see if you're right!

NOTICE

🔊 03.05 Listen to the audio and study the table. Repeat the phrases to try to mimic the speaker. Pay special attention to the way the speaker pronounces *lo siento*, *no entiendo* and *¿Puedes repetir?*

Essential phrases for Conversation 2

Spanish	Meaning
dices que ...	you say that ...
otra ciudad	another city
lo siento	I'm sorry (it I-feel)
no entiendo	I don't understand
para aprender español	(in order) to learn Spanish
¿en serio?	really? (in serious?)
trabajo aquí	I work here
¿puedes repetir?	can you repeat that?
un momento ...	one moment ...
no puedo oírte bien	I can't hear you well (no I-can hear-you well)

Convey whether or not you understand with **entiendo** and **no entiendo**. You may have heard people attempting to speak Spanish say **no comprendo**, but this actually means that you don't understand a concept. So if you just need a phrase repeated or rephrased, make sure you use **no entiendo**, or you might get a long explanation of something you really did not want to know.

1 Using the phrase list, write out the different forms in Spanish:

- yo form and tú form of *vivir* (to live) _____
- yo form and tú form of *estar* (to be) _____
- yo form of 'can', given that *puedes* is 'you can' _____
- tú forms of *decir* (to say) and *llamar* (to call) _____
- yo forms of *trabajar* (to work) and *entender* _____

VOCAB: para
'in order to'

Para in Spanish means something like 'in order to', as in **Estoy aquí para hablar con españoles!** (I'm here (in order) to speak with Spanish people!)

Survival phrases are your secret weapon for 'surviving' any conversation in Spanish, even when you're having trouble understanding.

CONVERSATION STRATEGY: survival phrases

In Conversations 1 and 2, you saw Sarah using several **survival phrases** to tell Antonio she's having trouble with her Spanish. Learn these phrases, and you'll never have an excuse to switch back to English.

- 1 Create two new survival phrases by combining *puedes* (can you) with object words, and add them into the cheat sheet below.

Example: Can you write it, please? → ¿Puedes escribirlo, por favor?

a I don't understand. **Can you help me?**

b I have only been learning Spanish for a month. **Can you speak slower?**

- 2 Add to the cheat sheet with the survival phrases you've learned so far.

Your survival phrases cheat sheet

Spanish	Meaning
¿Cómo se dice ... ?	How do you say ... ?
	Slower please.
	I'm sorry.
	I don't understand.
	Can you repeat that?
	One moment.
	I can't hear you.

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: 'listen', 'look', 'tell me' – the 'command' form

When you want to tell someone to 'watch', 'repeat' or 'go', you'll need to use the 'command' (or imperative) form. You saw this used in Unit 1, when Felipe told Sarah, *¡háblame de ti!* You'll hear a handful of words used this way again and again, such as:

¡Mira! (Look!) *¡Escucha!* (Listen!) *¡Ven!* (Come!)
¡Dime! (Tell me!) *¡Escúchame!* (Listen to me!) *¡Ayúdame!* (Help me!)

To use the command form, you'll usually just need to **remove the final 's' from the tú form** of a verb. You can also attach *-me/-te* to the end as an object.


Example: *comes* (you eat) → *¡Come!* (Eat!)
miras (you look) → *¡Mírame!* (Look at me!)

It's good to know a few of the most common verbs in the command form, but you can easily get by without using this form if you just add '**can you**' before any dictionary verb you know.

Example: *¡Mira!* (Look!) → *¿Puedes mirar?* ('Can you' + 'to look')

habla → *¿Puedes hablar?* *ven* → *¿Puedes venir?*
ayúdame → *¿Puedes ayudarme?* *escucha* → *¿Puedes escucharme?*

PRACTICE

1  **03.06** Can you guess how to say the following useful phrases in Spanish? Listen to the audio to check your answers.

- a Help me please! _____
- b Speak Spanish please! _____
- c Look at me! _____
- d Come here! _____

When you add *me*, *te*, etc. to the end of a verb, it often adds an accent to a vowel in the word that shows where the stress falls when you pronounce it, as with *ayúdame*. Don't worry about the how's and why's of this for now, but if you see it written down, be sure to put the stress on that vowel!

CULTURE TIP:

will I frustrate them?

In one of my early attempts to use Spanish, I managed to get a refund on a broken electric toothbrush through gesturing and a handful of words, none of which were 'broken' or 'toothbrush'! You'll find Spanish speakers all over the world to be very patient and friendly. Rest assured that you can speak broken Spanish with native speakers, and they'll be happy to help you. Try it!

2 Practise creating new sentences that combine words you know.

- a Where do you live? _____
- b What are you saying? (What you-say?) _____
- c What other city do you want to live in? (In what other city ...)

- d Why do you say that you want to work in Madrid?

- e I understand that you work. _____

3 You have now seen all of the main question words in Spanish! Fill in the Spanish question words in the cheat sheet. Use your dictionary to look up 'who?' in Spanish and fill in the translation.

Most 'wh-' question words in English have equivalents in Spanish that start with either qu or co (hard 'k' sound) or cu ('kw' sound).

Question words cheat sheet

Meaning	Spanish	Meaning	Spanish
Why?		Who?	
What?		Which?	¿Cuál?
When?		How?	¿Cómo?
Where?		How many?	

VOCAB: ¿cómo? as 'how?'

As well as meaning 'How?', ¿Cómo? doubles as a quick way to express misunderstanding (like 'Sorry?' in English). It's handy in a pinch, and is more polite than ¿Qué? ('What?')

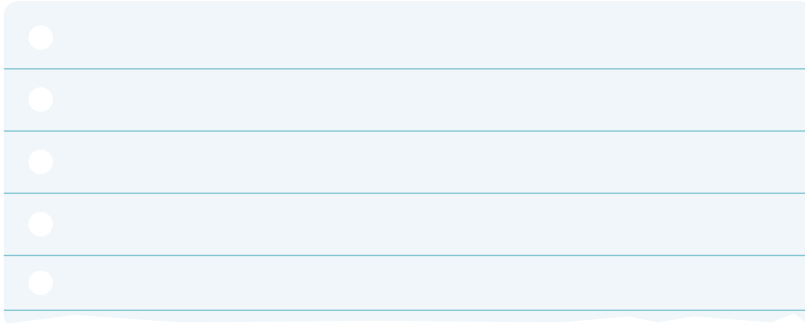
4 What question words would you ask in Spanish to get the answers:

- a *El sábado.* _____
- b *14.* _____
- c *Pablo.* _____
- d *La estación de tren.* _____
- e *Porque quiero.* _____

PUT IT TOGETHER

Let's keep building your script. Use what you've learned and new 'me-specific' vocab, to create sentences about yourself that say:

- where you're from, but where you live now (use *pero* and *ahora*)
- how long you've lived there (use *desde*)
- where you work (use *trabajo*)
- how long you've worked there (use *desde*).



CONVERSATION 3

Can you hear me now?

During their online class, Sarah and Antonio start having Internet connection problems.

🔊 03.07 Which word does Sarah use to tell Antonio that her connection is bad?

VOCAB: ouch! hey! ugh!

As in English, Spanish has different interjections that are great for expressing emotion, to make even your reactions more Spanish. These are some of the most common:

- ¡Ey! Hey!
- ¡Ay! Ow!
- Eh ... Um ...
- ¿Eh? What?/Right?
- Uf Ugh

If you need to access someone's wifi, just ask for their **contraseña** (password) - ¿Cuál es la contraseña del wifi? (What is the wifi password?)

Sarah: Lo siento. Tengo mala conexión. ¡Lo siento!

Antonio: No pasa nada. ¿Quieres desactivar la webcam?

Sarah: No ... Tengo un problema con mi ... ya sabes ... **uf** ...
¡No recuerdo la palabra! ¡Mi cosa ... de internet!

Antonio: ¿Tu **wifi**? ¿Tu ordenador?

Sarah: ¡Mi ordenador! Necesito reiniciarlo.

Antonio: Está bien, si crees que eso es una buena idea.

Sarah: ... ¿Puedes oírme ahora?

Antonio: No muy bien.

Sarah: Lo siento. Mi ordenador es viejo. ¿Puedo llamarte la próxima semana?

Antonio: ¡Por supuesto! ¿Cuándo quieres hablar de nuevo?
¿El sábado?

Sarah: ¡Está bien! ¡**Hasta luego!**

Antonio: ¡Hasta la próxima!

To sign off or say goodbye to someone, you could say **chao**, **hasta la próxima** (until the next (time)), **hasta luego** (until later), or just **hasta** + day/time (like **¡hasta mañana!** for 'see you tomorrow!'). And yes, **hasta la vista** (until the (next) sighting) is possible too, but definitely don't add 'baby'.

FIGURE IT OUT

1 There are several Spanish words in the conversation that are similar (or the same!) as their English counterparts. Can you guess their meaning by their sound?

- a *desactivar* c *conexión* e *internet*
b *reiniciar* d *wifi*

2 Use context to get the gist of the conversation. Then figure out which one of the following statements is *falso* and correct it.

- a Sarah thinks she has a bad connection. _____
b Antonio can't hear Sarah well. _____
c The problem is with Sarah's wifi. _____
d Sarah and Antonio agree to talk another time. _____

3 Write out the following phrases in Spanish:

- a I'm sorry _____ d it's not my _____
b no worries _____ e you know _____
c I need _____ f that's fine _____
g two ways of saying goodbye

4 This conversation uses two dictionary form verbs with an object (*lo, me, te*) attached. Find and highlight them.

5 What do you think the word *mi* means? _____

Mistakes are a necessary part of the process - you can't learn Spanish without making lots of them. And they aren't just inevitable, they are important for making progress. In games like chess, players are advised to lose 50 games as soon as possible. Why not take this philosophy to the extreme and aim to make 200 mistakes a day in Spanish? Get them out of your system sooner, and you can improve so much faster!

Being able to think up simpler ways to convey an idea is a key skill for reaching fluency. As a beginner, producing simple, even non-grammatical Spanish will allow you to contribute to more conversations, which will actually boost your progress!

¿Puedes decirme dónde está el banco? → ¿Banco ... dónde?

CONVERSATION STRATEGY 1: use 'Tarzan Spanish' to communicate with limited words

As a beginner, you won't always know how to say exactly what you want to say. Instead of feeling frustrated, focus on getting your point across, rather than speaking eloquently. This means becoming comfortable making mistakes.

That's why I recommend you embrace 'Tarzan Spanish'. Find ways to convey your ideas that are understandable, even if your grammar or word choice isn't beautiful. You can still get your meaning across if you know just the key words.

For example, if you want to say 'Could you tell me where the bank is?', you could convey the same meaning with only two words, '**Bank ... where?**' Just like Tarzan.

- 1 Try out your 'Tarzan Spanish'. Look at these common sentences. Isolate the key words, then use 'Tarzan Spanish' to convey the same meaning.

Example: *No entiendo. ¿Puedes repetir eso, por favor?* →
¿Repetir, por favor?

- a *Lo siento, ¿pero te importa hablar más despacio? (I'm sorry, would you mind speaking more slowly?)* _____
- b *¿Puedes decirme cuánto cuesta esto? (Can you tell me how much this costs?)* _____
- c *Perdon, ¿sabes dónde está el supermercado? (Excuse me, do you know where the supermarket is?)* _____

CONVERSATION STRATEGY 2: memorize the power nouns: *persona*, *lugar*, *cosa*

persona (person) *lugar* (place) *cosa* (thing)

These words are **power nouns**. So, by definition, they encapsulate pretty much all other nouns, and you can use them in a huge number of situations when you want to describe something but don't know the Spanish word.

In Spanish, many phrases use the form, (something) *de* (something else):

Examples: *la estación de tren* = lit. 'station of train' (train station)
la parada de autobús = lit. 'stop of bus' (bus stop)
la tarta de chocolate = lit. 'cake of chocolate' (chocolate cake)

You can use this to your advantage in countless situations. Just remember: (**power noun**) + *de* + (any word related to the *lugar*, *cosa* or *persona* in question)! For example, if you can't remember these words, try:

'train station' → 'lugar ... de tren'
'bed' (sleep thing) → 'cosa ... de dormir'
'teacher' (teaching person) → 'persona ... de enseñar'

1 Try it out! How could you convey your meaning using power nouns?

Example: Pen? → cosa de escribir ('thing of writing')

a Library? → _____ ('place of books')

b Waitress? → _____ ('person of restaurant')

In the conversation above, Sarah uses this trick when she forgets the word for 'computer'.

I call the fear of making mistakes 'perfectionist paralysis'. Perfectionism is your enemy - it will hold you back from actually communicating. If you wait to say everything perfectly, you'll never say anything at all!

Remember to use the power noun first, since that will be easier for a Spanish speaker to understand.

NOTICE

🔊 03.08 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 3

Spanish	Meaning
lo siento	I'm sorry
no pasa nada	no worries
¡no recuerdo la palabra!	I don't remember the word
necesito reiniciarlo	I need to restart it
está bien	alright
si crees que ...	if you think that ...
¿puedes oírme ahora?	can you hear me now?
mi ordenador ...	my computer ...
... es viejo	... is old
la próxima semana	next week
de nuevo	again (of new)
¡hasta luego!	see you later! (until later!)
¡hasta la próxima!	see you next time! (until the next)

VOCAB: *si* and *sí*

You've seen that **no** means 'no', but it turns out that **si** does not mean yes! It means 'if'. The word you need for 'yes' is **sí**. The accent on the 'i' makes a big difference! **¿Hablas español? ¡Sí!**

Similarly, **tu** = 'your' (**tu** *wifi* 'your wifi') and **tú** = 'you' (**tú** *eres* 'you are').

VOCAB EXPLANATION: *vocabulario de tecnología*

We've seen that *ordenador* is the term for 'computer' in Spain, but Latin Americans overwhelmingly tend to say *computadora*. As well as this, 'laptop' in Spain is *portátil*, but is also *laptop* in other places.

You'll actually find a lot of vocabulary from *tecnología* has made its way into Spanish from English – there's also:

webcam email internet (doble) clic wifi

as well as words that follow our cognates pattern. Some have even morphed into verbs, like:

desactivar reiniciar conectar editar copiar

With all this help, *por qué no* open your *ordenador, portátil o móvil*, look for *preferencias* in the *menú*, and change all your *interfaces digitales* to *español*?

1 Fill in the gaps with the Spanish verb forms you've learned so far:

a tener (to have) _____ (I have) tienes (you have)

b creer (to think) creo (I think) _____ (you think)

c poder (to be able to) _____ (I can) puedes (you can)

d oír (to hear) _____ oírte puedes _____
(I can hear you) (Can you hear me?)

e llamar (to call) me _____ te llamas
(I call myself) (you call yourself)

2 Notice the connector words in the phrase list. If someone says, *lo siento*, and you want to tell them 'it's OK', you could use two phrases from the phrase list. One is given. Find the other and write it out.

no hay problema _____

3 If you can't remember how to say 'I forgot the word', what could you say instead? _____

PRACTICE

1 Practise combining new verbs with other more familiar words.

- a I have + a laptop _____
- b You have + another computer _____
- c I think that + you know _____
- d You think that + I can _____
- e I can + to say _____
- f You can + to call _____
- g I need + another computer _____
- h I need + to work _____
- i You need + to be able to _____
- j I need + to have _____
- k You need + to be _____

2 Fill in the missing words in Spanish.

- a ¿ _____ reiniciar tu _____? (You need to restart your computer?)
- b _____, _____ te. ¡ _____!
(If you want, I can help you. No worries!)
- c _____ ahora. ¿ _____?
(I can hear you now. Can you say it again?)
- d _____ recuerdo _____ . (I don't remember where it is!)
- e _____ que ahora puedo _____ te. (I think I can see you now!)



#LANGUAGEHACK: power-learn word genders with the word-endings trick

As you've seen, Spanish words are divided into masculine or feminine. The gender affects whether the word is prefaced with *el* or *la* (both meaning 'the'), *un* or *una* (both meaning 'a'), and it affects other descriptive words around it, like *nuevo* or *nueva* (new):

Feminine: *la conversación* (the conversation) *una mujer* (a woman)
Masculine: *el tren* (the train) *un hombre* (a man)

But why is 'conversation' feminine? When you first start learning Spanish, it can seem like genders are assigned at random. For instance, *masculinidad* is feminine and *feminismo* is masculine!

Don't try to learn the genders of words one at a time. This will quickly start to feel overwhelming. Instead, learn the simple patterns behind the genders.

Word gender has nothing to do with whether the concept of the word is masculine or feminine. It's actually the spelling of the word, in particular the word's ending, that determines its gender. Here's the general rule for how to guess a word's gender based on its spelling:

❖ If a word ends in *-o*, always guess masculine.

Examples: *el pollo* (the chicken), *un beso* (a kiss), *un perro* (a dog), *un gato* (a cat)

❖ If a word ends in *-a* always guess feminine.

Examples: *una idea* (an idea), *la diferencia* (the difference), *la cultura* (the culture), *la cosa* (the thing)

❖ If it ends in *-e*, an accented vowel (*á, é, í, ó, ú*), *-ma*, or most consonants, guess masculine.

Examples: *el perfume* (perfume/cologne), *el sofá* (sofa), *el programa* (schedule), *el rumor* (rumour)

❖ If it ends in *-d*, *-z* or *-ión*, guess feminine.

Examples: *la felicidad* (happiness), *la nariz* (nose), *la conversación* (conversation)

There are always exceptions, but these tricks work most of the time. Here's another situation where guessing is your friend, and it will almost never cause a communication problem.

English once used word genders, too! We lost them over time, but sailors still refer to the ocean and boats as 'she' - a modern remnant of old English word genders.

YOUR TURN: use the hack

1 Guess the genders of the following words. Fill in the gap with either *el* or *la*.

a _____ <i>universidad</i>	e _____ <i>ciudad</i> (city)	i _____ <i>comedia</i>	m _____ <i>fiesta</i>
b _____ <i>capitalismo</i>	f _____ <i>apartamento</i>	j _____ <i>diferencia</i>	n _____ <i>poema</i>
c _____ <i>teatro</i>	g _____ <i>paz</i> (peace)	k _____ <i>religión</i>	o _____ <i>acción</i>
d _____ <i>teléfono</i>	h _____ <i>ordenador</i>	l _____ <i>casa</i>	p _____ <i>problema</i>

2 Now, you should be able to answer the question: Why is *masculinidad* feminine and *feminismo* masculine?

GRAMMAR TIP: guessing with plurals

If you only know the plural form of a word, there are still patterns you can follow here – you just need to take an extra step. Most of the time, if you remove the *s* from a word, you'll end up with the singular version, and you're back in business!

dialectos el dialecto tells you the word is masculine

For words ending in a consonant, you can still work it out easily. For these words, add *-es* (and, if the word ends in *z*, change it to 'c' first). From this you'll get: *las actividades* (the activities), *las luces* (the lights) (*la luz* = the light) and *las elecciones*.

PUT IT TOGETHER

Let's keep building your script!

Use at least three of the verbs given to describe your favourite devices (smartphone, computer/laptop, tablet, etc.). Say something you need or want that you think would be helpful in learning Spanish. Be sure to look up new 'me-specific' words so you're practising phrases that you'll use in real conversations.

creo tengo necesito pienso quiero

creo tengo necesito pienso quiero

○

○

○

○

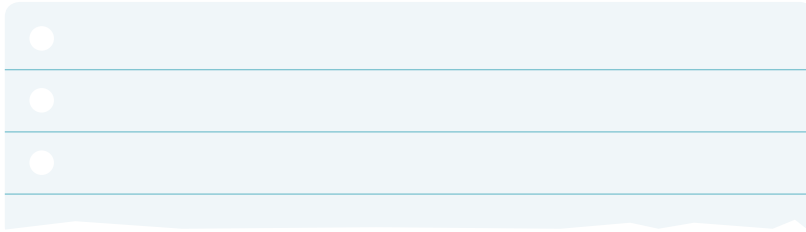
○

COMPLETING UNIT 3

Check your understanding

🔊 03.09 Review the conversations from this unit, and then:

- 🔊 Listen to the audio and write down what you hear.
- 🔊 Feel free to pause or replay the audio as often as you need.



Show what you know ...

Here's what you've just learned. Write or say an example for each item in the list. Then check off the ones you know.

- Say 'hello' and 'nice to meet you'.
- Give two phrases for saying goodbye.
- Say 'I understand' and 'I don't understand'.
- Say something that you have and something that you need.
- Use the survival phrases, 'Can you repeat that?' and 'Slower, please?'
- Use Spanish object words in the right word order, e.g. 'Can you help me?'
- Give the Spanish words for 'person', 'place' and 'thing'.

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

.....
It's time to complete your mission: use 'Tarzan Spanish' to play (and win!) the word game. To do this, you'll need to prepare phrases for describing a Spanish person, place or thing that other people could guess – without knowing the word itself.

Please visit www.italki.com/languagehacking



STEP 1: build your script

If you get stuck, you're probably struggling with perfectionist paralysis. Take a step back, and remind yourself that your script is supposed to be imperfect today!

Let's practise embracing 'imperfectionism' with today's script. Underline the key words you need to convey your point, then look them up in your dictionary – but don't try to have perfect grammar! If you come across a complex expression, try to think of simpler words to convey the same idea.

Keep building your script using 'Tarzan Spanish' and the unit conversation strategies. Be sure to:

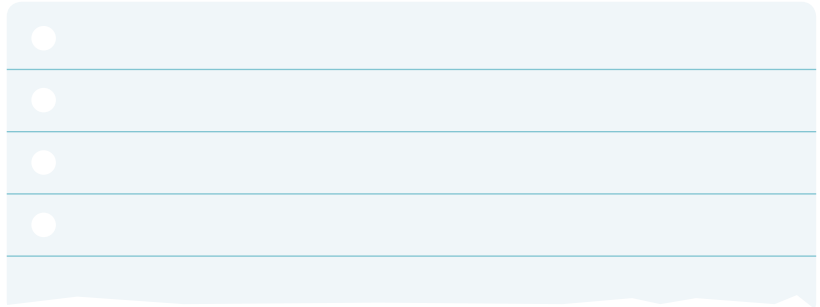
- say whether you're describing a person, place or thing
- for a person ... describe him/her with any words you know (what is his/her *trabajo*? Where is he/she *ahora*?)
- for a thing, describe whether it's something you have (*tengo*), need (*necesito*), like or dislike
- for a place, describe what types of people live there or things associated with it.

For example, you could say:

Hay ... persona ... trabajo ... en el cine ...

Muy famoso ... es un hombre ... pirata loco ... siempre decir ... ¿dónde 'rum'?

Write down your script, then repeat it until you feel confident.



STEP 2: practice makes perfect ... online

Getting over the embarrassment of 'looking silly' is part of language learning. Use your 'Tarzan Spanish' to help you overcome these fears! Upload your clip to the community area, and you'll be surprised at how much encouragement you get.

It's time to complete your mission and share a recording with the community! Go online to find your mission for Unit 3 and see how far you can get with your 'Tarzan Spanish'.

Really! The more time you spend on a task, the better you will get! (Studies show that you will be 30% better than your peers who don't practise their speaking regularly.)

STEP 3: learn from other learners

Can you guess the word? After you've uploaded your own clip, get inspiration from how others use 'Tarzan Spanish'. **Your task is to play the word game and try to guess the words other people describe.** Take note of the clever strategies they use, and make a mental note to try them later on your own.

HACK IT: change your search preferences to *Español*

Did you know that many major websites automatically detect your language from your browser settings, and adjust accordingly? You can change these settings to *Español*, and you'll instantly notice that your search engine, social networking sites and video searches will automatically change to Spanish!

STEP 4: reflect on what you've learned

Every time you use a script, think about where your gaps are. What words do you reach for over and over, but don't know yet? Are there any words you hear frequently, but don't understand? Always write them down!

You can also simply go to google.es (and click *Español*) to search Spanish-language websites around the world ... then be sure to type your key words in Spanish!

HEY, LANGUAGE HACKER, YOU'RE ON A ROLL!

By learning to work around a limited vocabulary, you really can start speaking Spanish with other people in no time. It's not about learning all of the words and grammar. It's about communicating – sometimes creatively. By finishing this mission, you've learned valuable skills that you'll use again and again in the real world.

Next, you'll learn to talk about your plans for the future.

4 DESCRIBING YOUR FUTURE PLANS



Your mission

Imagine this – you want to spend a few weeks exploring Europe, but you can only afford the trip if your Spanish-speaking friend comes with you and splits the cost.

Your mission is to make an offer they can't refuse! **Describe the trip of your dreams** and convince a friend to take the trip with you. Use **vamos a ...** to draw the person in and say all the wonderful things you'll do together. Be prepared to **explain how you'll get there and how you'll spend your time**.

This mission will help you expand your conversation skills by talking about your future plans and combining new 'sequencing' phrases for better Spanish flow.

Mission prep

- ...❖ Develop a conversation strategy for breaking the ice: **te importa si**
- ...❖ Talk about your future travel plans using **voy a + dictionary form**
- ...❖ Describe your plans in a sequence: **primero, así/así que, entonces**
- ...❖ Learn essential travel vocabulary: **puedes tomar un tren, ir en avión**
- ...❖ Memorize a script that you're likely to say often.

BUILDING LANGUAGE FOR STRIKING UP A CONVERSATION

It takes a bit of courage to get started practising your Spanish, but preparing ice-breakers in advance helps a lot! In this unit, you'll build a ready-made script you can use to start any conversation. You'll learn how to make conversations with Spanish speakers more casual, and hopefully even make a new friend or two!



#LANGUAGEHACK

say exponentially more with these five booster verbs

CONVERSATION 1

Excuse me, do you speak Spanish?

Sarah is back at her local language group. She's been practising her Spanish for a few weeks now and chatting regularly with Felipe, but today, she wants to build up her confidence to approach someone new and strike up a conversation.

Another common word for the Spanish language is *castellano*. You'll hear this more often in countries like Spain and Argentina.

VOCAB: *hay* – 'there is'/'there are'
The Spanish phrase *hay* (pronounced like 'I' in English) is very useful because it means both 'there is' and 'there are' – it doesn't change. So you could say *hay un libro* (there is a book) or *hay tres libros* (there are three books).

🔊 04.01 What phrases does Sarah use to approach someone new?

Sarah: Perdón, ¿hablas español?

Julia: ¡Sí! Soy de Colombia.

Sarah: ¡Guay! ¿Te importa si hablamos español juntas? Necesito practicar.

Julia: ¿Por qué no? ¡Va a ser divertido! Puedes sentarte aquí.

Sarah: ¡Gracias y mucho gusto! Soy Sarah.

Julia: Mucho gusto, soy Julia.

Sarah: Debes saber que aún soy principiante.

Julia: No *hay* problema. ¡Ya sabes decir muchas cosas!

Sarah: Gracias, pero necesito practicar mucho más español.

Julia: Bueno, ¡soy muy paciente! Así que, ¡vamos a hablar!



FIGURE IT OUT

1 ¿Verdadero o falso? Select the correct answer, then correct the false statement(s).

- a Julia is from Colombia. *verdadero / falso*
b Sarah asks Julia to go to a café with her. *verdadero / falso*
c Sarah thinks Julia is impatient. *verdadero / falso*

2 What do you think the word *juntas* means? Can you guess how it would change if the speakers were male?

3 Find and highlight the phrases in which:

- a Julia tells Sarah where she's from.
b Sarah asks Julia if she speaks Spanish.
c Sarah asks to practise Spanish with Julia.
d Sarah says she needs to practise more.
e Julia says 'let's talk'.

4 What are two phrases from the conversation you can use when approaching someone to practise Spanish?

5 Now find these three words and circle them.

fun patient beginner

6 When someone makes a request of you, rather than just saying 'yes', how else could you reply? Write out the phrases:

a Cool! _____ c Why not? _____

b It will be fun! _____ d No problem! _____

NOTICE

🔊 04.02 Listen to the audio and study the table. Pay special attention to the way Sarah pronounces *te importa si* and *aún soy principiante*.

CULTURE TIP:

Spanish speakers around the world

Spanish is the primary/official language of **20 countries** (Spain plus most of the Americas), not to mention other countries with large populations of Spanish-speaking immigrants. This amounts to about 500 million speakers around the world! Think of Spanish as your passport to an incredibly large pool of fascinating people.

There are so many ways to say 'cool' in Spanish - you can use *chévere* in Latin America, *guay* in Spain, or even *genial*, which means 'genius-like'.

04.02

Essential phrases for Conversation 1

Spanish	Meaning
perdón	excuse me
¡guay!	cool!
¿te importa si ...	do you mind if ... (you it-matters if)
... hablamos español juntas?	... we speak Spanish together?
¡va a ser divertido!	it will be fun! (it-goes to to-be fun)
puedes sentarte aquí	you can sit here
debes saber que ...	you should know that ...
aún soy ... principiante	I am still ... a beginner
ya sabes ...	you already know ...
decir muchas cosas!	(how) to say so many things!
mucho más	much more
¡vamos a hablar!	let's talk!

VOCAB: *juntos/juntas* (together)

Because our speakers are both female, you see the word 'together' as *juntas*. But when you're talking about a mixed group of men and women or a group of men, the word changes to *juntos*.

VOCAB: *mucho/a* and *muchos*

You can say *mucho* with this one word! *mucho* and *mucha* each mean 'a lot (of)':

••••• ¡Tienes mucha paciencia!

••••• ¡Vive con muchos gatos!

1 What expression should you use to ask, 'Do you mind if ...'?

2 What phrase can you use to invite someone to sit down?

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form: *mucho/a, muchos/as*.

a Hay _____ fiestas en España. (There are a lot of parties in Spain.)

b ¡Quiero hablar _____ español hoy!
(I want to speak a lot of Spanish today!)

c ¡Tengo _____ amigos! (I have many friends!)

d Bebe _____ café. (He drinks a lot of coffee.)

4 Notice the word order in the phrase *aún soy principiante*. You've seen this structure with *solo* in Unit 2, and also with *ya* in the phrase list. Use the same word order to create sentences from the word jumbles:

- a *inglés/solo/hablo* _____
- b *la/como/aún/paella* _____
- c *estoy/casa/ya/en* _____
- d *estudias/libro/el/aún* _____

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: ¿hablamos?

The Spanish word for 'we' is *nosotros*, but as with *yo* and *tú*, you'll rarely need to use this word. You'll almost always just use the 'we' form of the verb instead: **hablamos** (we're talking).

The ending of the verb (usually *-mos*) makes it clear that you're talking about 'we', whether it's *vamos*, *comemos*, *viajamos* or *estudiamos*. Using the *nosotros* form is also very easy. Just **replace the r** at the end of the word in its dictionary form with *-mos*. That's it. You're done!

Example: *hablar* (to speak) → **hablamos** (we speak)
saber (to know) → **sabemos** (we know)
escribir (to write) → **escribimos** (we write).

This works for all three verb types (*-ar*, *-er* and *-ir*) the vast majority of the time.

1 Try it yourself. Complete the sentences by changing the verb in brackets from the dictionary form into the 'we' form.

- a _____ *mucho tiempo en España.* (*pasar*)
(We're spending a lot of time in Spain.)
- b _____ *que eso cuesta mucho.* (*creer*)
(We think that costs a lot.)
- c _____ *ahora.* (*venir*) (We are coming now.)
- d *¿Cuántas personas* _____ *aquí?* (*vivir*)
(How many people live here?)
- e *¿Dónde* _____ *hoy?* (*comer*)
(Where are we eating today?)

VOCAB: ya!

Ya is a versatile word that can be used to mean:

- 'now', with a sense of urgency – ¡**Quiero chocolate! ¡Ya!**
- 'stop' for when you want someone to stop doing something, e.g., if someone is pouring water for you, but you don't want more, say ¡**Ya!**
- 'yeah, I know' – **Mañana es mi cumpleaños./Ya. Tranquilo. Tengo tu regalo.** (Tomorrow is my birthday./ Yeah, I know. Don't worry, I've got your present.)

But if two or more ladies are talking, they'll refer to themselves as **nosotras**.

¡Vamos!

The word *vamos* means ‘we go’, but you can also use *vamos* to mean ‘let’s go’, or even just ‘let’s’ when it’s before another verb and followed with *a*, like with *¡Vamos a hablar!*

2 Use *vamos* in different ways to write out the sentences in Spanish.

- a Pedro and I go to the beach. _____
- b Let’s go, Marta! _____
- c Let’s go to your house! _____

CONVERSATION STRATEGY: memorize regularly-used scripts

A lot of people get nervous speaking to someone new for the first time – especially in another language. But when you plan out what you’ll say in advance, you have less to worry about. Luckily, many conversations take a similar pattern, and you can use that to your advantage!

Learn set phrases

Just because you don’t know the grammar behind a phrase, it doesn’t mean you can’t use it. You can simply memorize full phrases as *chunks*, so you can use them whenever you need to. Try this with the very useful power phrase *Te importa si ...*, which can be used in a variety of situations and conversation topics.

Memorize a script

When you learn set phrases that are specific to you and combine them, you create a personal ‘script’ you can use over and over again.

For instance, during my travels I’m often asked, ‘Why are you learning this language?’ or about my work as a writer, which isn’t easy to explain as a beginner. Because I know these questions are coming, I craft a solid response in advance so I can speak confidently when the question inevitably comes up.

You can ride a bike without understanding aerodynamics, you can use a computer even if you don’t know the physics of how circuits work ... and you can use Spanish phrases at the right time, even if you don’t understand each word and why they go together the way they do!

You may be asked about your upcoming travels, or the personal reasons why you're learning Spanish. Ultimately, if you know you'll need to give an explanation or mini-story frequently, memorize it to have ready when the subject comes up. Here's how to do it.

- ❖ **Decide what you want to say.** Make it personal to you.
- ❖ **Then simplify it** to remove complicated expressions. If possible, do this in Spanish from the start by jotting down key words and phrases – you can fill in the script later. If you find this tricky, start your script in English and then try to translate it to Spanish.
- ❖ Finally, when you have your final script, **recite it as often as you can** until you commit it to memory.

PUT IT TOGETHER

1 If you were planning to visit Spain, in what situations might you ask the question, *¿Te importa si ...?* Use this phrase along with your dictionary to create sentences you could imagine yourself using abroad, such as:

- ❖ at a social event – (e.g. '... if I speak with you?')
- ❖ in a park – (e.g. '... if I touch your dog?')
- ❖ at a café – (e.g. '... if I sit here?')
- ❖ at someone's house – (e.g. '... if I come in?') (*entrar*).

-
-
-
-
-

HACK IT: *have your script native-approved*
You can even **have a native speaker review your script** and refine your Spanish. It's fine to speak spontaneously with mistakes, but you may as well get it right if you're memorizing it in advance. It's easy and free when you know where to look. See our Resources online to find out how.

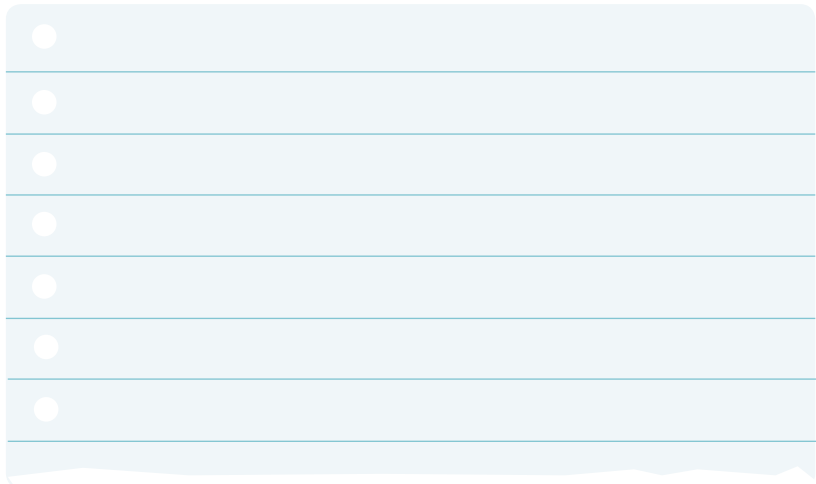
2 Pick one of these situations, then prepare a few phrases you can use without having to think on the spot.

These kinds of phrases are great to have in your back pocket. You'll use them loads. You may know a few already, but it's good to know a go-to answer for this question.

⚡ **Situation 1:** Someone finds out that you're learning Spanish ... and they also happen to speak Spanish. (For this, I like to prepare phrases like, 'Ah, you speak Spanish!', 'I'm still a beginner', or 'I've only been learning since ...')

⚡ **Situation 2:** Someone asks you to give a mini life story, or asks why you're learning Spanish. (For this, you might say something like, 'I think the language is beautiful!' or 'And one day I hope to go to Spain.')

⚡ **Situation 3:** You need to interrupt someone on the street to ask a question in Spanish. (Politeness goes a long way here, so for this I like to memorize a few phrases like, 'Excuse me', or 'Do you mind if I ask something?')



CONVERSATION 2

Where are you going?

▶▶ 04.03 What phrase does Julia use to ask, 'Do you travel a lot?'

Julia: ¿Desde hace cuánto tiempo estás en Madrid? ¿Viajas mucho?

Sarah: No mucho ... Estoy aquí en Madrid desde hace **unos** meses.

Julia: Debes visitar Barcelona. Puedes tomar un tren mañana si quieres y pasar el fin de semana allí.

Sarah: ¡Es una idea genial! Quizás el próximo fin de semana. **Este finde** no tengo 'tiempo'.

Julia: ¿Quieres decir que no tienes 'tiempo'?

Sarah: Exacto, sí. Perdona.

Julia: ¡No pasa nada! Yo debo viajar más. Quiero ver otras ciudades de España, como Valencia y Murcia. ¡Es ahora o nunca!

Sarah: ¡Claro!

Since Sarah and Julia are both visitors to Madrid, travel is a natural conversation topic. In fact, as you learn any new language, you'll likely be asked (or want to ask someone) about travelling to different places.

GRAMMAR TIP: 'this' and 'that'

By now you've seen an array of Spanish words claiming to mean 'this' and 'that', and you may be wondering: 'So which is it?' Basically: *est_* is 'this' and *es_* is 'that'. The final vowel changes between *e* and *a* before masculine and feminine objects, and *o* when the word is by itself.

Tengo este trabajo y esta casa. (I have this job and this house.)
¡Yo quiero eso! (I want that!)

FIGURE IT OUT

1 Use context along with words you know to figure out:

- Where does Julia suggest that Sarah visit? _____
- What other cities does Julia want to see? _____
- Which word does Sarah mispronounce? _____

2 Highlight the following phrases, then write them out here in Spanish.

- How long have you been in Madrid? _____
- for a few months _____

3 Is the word *ciudad* masculine or feminine? How do you know?

4 Can you deduce the meaning of these phrases?

- pasar el fin de semana* _____
- el próximo fin de semana* _____
- ¡Claro!* _____

5 Match the Spanish words with their meanings.

1 time 2 other 3 never 4 like 5 more 6 for 7 exactly

a como c tiempo e más g exacto
 b nunca d por f otra

NOTICE

🔊 04.04 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 2

GRAMMAR TIP:

unos and **unas** (a few)
 To translate 'some' (as in some unspecified amount), simply make *uno/a* plural:
un mes → *unos meses* (a few months)
una hora → *unas horas* (a few hours).

Finde is a common slang term, short for *fin de semana*! You can use them interchangeably.

In Spanish, the way to say 'you mean ...' is *quieres decir ...*. You may hear this as you're learning and getting corrections from others. You can also say *quiero decir* to clarify something you've said.

Spanish	Meaning
¿desde hace cuánto tiempo estás ...?	how long are you ...?
¿viajas mucho?	do you travel a lot?
unos meses	a few (some) months
debes ...	you should ...
... visitar	... visit
... tomar un tren	... take a train
pasar	to spend (to pass)
el fin de semana allí	the weekend there
quizás este finde	maybe this weekend
¿quieres decir que ...?	do you mean ...? (you-want to-say that ...)
no tienes tiempo	you don't have time
debo viajar más	I should travel more
... ver otras ciudades	... to see other cities
es ahora o nunca	it's now or never!
¡claro!	for sure! (clear)

1 How would you write the following in Spanish?

- a a few cities _____
- b there is no time _____
- c There are some friends that I want to see!

2 Fill in the gaps for each phrase based on the English translation.

- a _____ *fin de semana* (the weekend)
- b _____ *finde* (this weekend)
- c *el* _____ *finde* (next weekend)
- d *el fin de semana* _____ (last weekend)

3 What phrases could you use to:

- a recommend a place someone should visit?

- b correct yourself in Spanish by saying 'I mean ...'?

- c ask, 'Do you mean ...?'

4 Match up the Spanish phrases with their English translations.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| a <i>trabajas</i> | 1 you should visit |
| b <i>voy a decir</i> | 2 you can take |
| c <i>debes visitar</i> | 3 you travel |
| d <i>quiero ver</i> | 4 you work |
| e <i>viajas</i> | 5 I'm going to say |
| f <i>debo viajar más</i> | 6 I want to see |
| g <i>puedes tomar</i> | 7 I should travel more |

5 For each sentence, choose the correct form of the Spanish verb, then write out the rest of the sentence yourself.

- a *Debo/Debes/Deber* _____.
(You should take a train next weekend.)
- b _____ *paso/pasas/pasar* _____.
(I like to pass time in Toledo)
- c *¿Viajo/Viajas/Viajar* _____?
(Do you travel much?)
- d _____ *veo/ves/ver el Alcázar* _____.
(Let's see the Alcázar tomorrow.)
- e _____ *visito/visitas/visitar* _____.
(I want to visit Columbia.)
- f *Tomo/Tomas/Tomar un taxi* _____.
(I take a taxi in the city.)

PRONUNCIATION EXPLANATION: hack the sounds

When I first started learning Spanish, I was convinced that I would have a strong foreign accent for the rest of my life. But I was eventually able to completely turn the tables, and have even been mistaken for a native speaker on many occasions!

I did this not by trying to master the sounds from the start, but by trying to be *good enough* and accept the natural struggles every beginner faces.

You can improve your accent in Spanish with deliberate active practice, lots of native exposure, and trying to make tiny improvements every day rather than huge improvements at once. **Try these approximate pronunciation tips** now, and keep them in mind when you're speaking, but permit yourself to develop your accent over time. Don't be shy about how you sound!

j The *j* in Spanish is pronounced sort of like an aspirated *h* in Latin America, but is stronger in Spain, like the 'ch' in the Scottish 'loch'. You'll use the same sound for *-ge-* and *-gi-* combinations (in words like *general*).

- 1** 🗣️ **04.05** Listen to the audio and repeat what the speaker says. You will hear one syllable and then the full word, with a pause after each one.

jardin, juan, genial, japonés, viaje

V You've probably already noticed that the Spanish *b* and *v* tend to be pronounced the same. The precise sound is somewhere between the two, but for now, try to pronounce both as a *b* and you'll be understood fine.

- 2** 🗣️ **04.06** Listen to the audio and repeat what the speaker says. *vale, verdad, vocabulario, vivir, bueno*

rr We've already touched on how to pronounce a single *r*, but the 'trilled *r*' is harder to put in black and white. I worked with a patient native speaker for a few minutes once a day, and eventually got it. Nothing beats native exposure for improving these sounds! You'll hear this sound in *carro*, and also when a word starts with *r*, as in *roto* (broken).

What worked well for me was to simply use the tapped *r* all the time at first - and people understood me fine!

- 3** 🎧 **04.07** Listen to the audio and repeat what the speaker says.
radio, respeto, ruso, barril, ferry

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: para

When you want to say the reason you're doing something, you'll use *para*. (You've already seen *para* used this way, replacing 'to' before a verb). A good trick to remember is **if you can replace the 'to' in English with 'in order to', then use *para***:

*Quiero visitarte este año. Voy a España **para** visitarte este año.*

(I want to visit you this year.) (I'm going to Spain **(in order)** to visit you this year.)

Examples:

*Estoy aquí **para** hablar con españoles.*

(I'm here **(in order)** to speak with Spanish people.)

*Voy al cine **para** ver la película.*

(I'm going to the cinema **(in order)** to see the film.)

*Leo el libro **para** aprender cómo hacerlo.*

(I'm reading the book **(in order)** to learn how to do it.)

*Me gusta hablar español con ella. (I like **to** speak Spanish with her.)*

- 1** Circle either *para* or the blank space in these sentences, depending on whether or not *para* is required.

a *Voy a España (**para**/____) aprender español.*

(I'm going to Spain to learn Spanish.)

b *Me encanta (**para**/____) oír el acento argentino en español.*

(I love to hear the Argentine accent in Spanish.)

c *Estoy en la escuela (**para**/____) aprender. (I'm in school to learn.)*

d *Prefiero (**para**/____) comer en casa. (I prefer to eat at home.)*

You could say 'to fly', or 'to drive', but these words use some verb forms in Spanish we haven't seen yet. So why not **rephrase it** using *ir* (to go) ... instead? Rephrasing is a powerful technique for saying what you want to ... even if you don't know the words yet!

Here's some additional vocab you can use to talk about your own travel plans.

Travel vocab

Spanish	Meaning	Spanish	Meaning
tomar ...	to take ...	ir en ...	to go by ...
el tren	the train	avión	plane
el autobús	the bus	tren	train
el metro	the metro	coche/carro	car
un taxi	a taxi	bicicleta	bicycle

VOCAB: coche

Say **coche** in Spain, but **carro** in most other Spanish-speaking countries.

PRACTICE

1 Fill in the blanks with the missing words in Spanish.

- a _____ _____ la Azotea de Bellas Artes _____
toda _____
de Madrid. (**You should visit** the Azotea de Bellas Artes to **see** all of **the city** of Madrid.)
- b ¿Es posible _____ _____ entre las ciudades en España?
(Is it possible **to go by car** between cities in Spain?)
- c Quiero _____ a otras ciudades _____ Valencia _____ Murcia!
(I want **to go** to other cities **like** Valencia **and** Murcia!)
- d _____ _____ a Italia, _____ tomar el tren. (**To go** to Italy, **you should** take the train.)
- e ¿Debo _____ _____ es mejor _____
_____?
(Should I **go by plane or** is it better to **go by train**?)
- f ¿Por qué _____ _____? ¡ _____ muchas razones!
(Why **go by bicycle**? **There are** many reasons!)

2 Use what you know about different verb forms to practise using this vocab in different ways.

- a I'm taking the train. _____ c We're taking a taxi? _____
b I'm going by car. _____ d You go by plane. _____

3 Create new sentences using the Spanish words and phrases given, plus your own additions.

- a When I go to Spain, I will do so many things! _____
- b I would like to visit my sister. _____
- c I think that we'll take the train. _____
- d I want to see the architecture, visit the museums,
go to the restaurants ... _____
- e I know that it's going to be a lot of fun! _____

PUT IT TOGETHER

1 Read and respond to the following questions in Spanish, to create new sentences that are relevant to your life. Use your dictionary to look up the 'me-specific' vocab you need.

- a *¿Viajas mucho? Viajo* _____
... *¿O un poco? ¿O nunca?*
- b *¿Dónde vas en tu próximo viaje? Voy a* _____
- c *¿Por cuánto tiempo? Voy por* _____
- d *¿Cuándo vas? Voy* _____
... *¿Este mes? ¿El próximo año?*
- e *¿Cómo vas?* _____
... *¿Vas en coche? ¿Vas en avión?*

CONVERSATION 3

How are you spending the weekend?

Sarah and Julia start making plans for the weekend.

🔊 **04.08** Notice how the phrases *voy a* and *vas a* are used to talk about future plans. How does Julia ask, 'What are you going to do?'

VOCAB: *como* (like) and *cómo* (how)

This almost looks like *cómo* (how), except for that important accent. Without it, the word means 'like', and can even be an answer to the question!

¿Cómo hablas? Pues, como un español, ¡claro!

VOCAB: *todo el mundo* (everyone)

I love the Spanish way of saying 'everyone'. Not content with just everybody nearby, it's 'all the world' – so you can rest assured that nobody is left out.

Julia: Entonces, ¿qué vas a hacer en Barcelona?

Sarah: Primero, voy a ver la arquitectura de Gaudí, **como** la Sagrada Familia. Luego voy al restaurante Duran, para comer en el lugar favorito de Dalí. Después voy a visitar la Rambla, para ver el Mercado de la Boquería. Y voy a hablar español con **todo el mundo**, por supuesto.

Julia: ¡Increíble! ¡Vas a estar ocupada! Quiero hacer eso también, ¿puedo ir contigo?

Sarah: ¡Sí, genial! ¡Podemos descubrir la ciudad juntas! ¿Cuándo vamos?

Julia: Creo que estoy libre el próximo fin de semana, pero aún no lo sé. ¿Puedo llamarte el lunes?

Sarah: Sí, aquí tienes mi número. ¿Necesitas también mi dirección de email?

Julia: Sí, ¿por qué no? ... ¡Gracias! ¡Hasta el lunes!

FIGURE IT OUT

1 *¿Verdadero o falso?* Are the following statements true or false? Select the correct answer, then correct the false statement.

- a The first thing Sarah will do is see the Sagrada Familia. v / f
- b After the Sagrada Familia, Sarah is going to visit the Duran restaurant. v / f
- c Sarah is going to practise her Spanish with everyone when she goes to the Rambla. v / f
- d Sarah wants to go to the Rambla to shop at the market. v / f
- e Sarah thinks she is free next week, but she doesn't know yet. v / f
- f Julia is going to call Sarah on Thursday. v / f

2 Give the answers to the following questions in Spanish.

- a Why is Sarah going to the Rambla?

Para _____

- b Why is Sarah going to the Duran restaurant?

Para _____

3 What is the meaning of these phrases?

- a *aquí tienes mi número* _____
- b *el lugar favorito de Dalí* _____
- c *vas a estar ocupada* _____

4 Highlight the corresponding phrases in Spanish, then write them out.

- a What are you going to do in Barcelona? _____
- b I want to do the same things. _____

NOTICE

🔊 04.09 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 3

Spanish	Meaning
¿qué vas a hacer?	what are you going to do?
primero, voy a ver	first, I'm going to see
como	like
luego voy ...	next, I'll go ...
para comer	(in order) to eat
ver el mercado	see the market
el lugar favorito	the favourite place
después	then
con todo el mundo	with everyone
vas a estar ocupada	you will be busy (you-go to to-be busy)
también	too
¿puedo ir contigo?	can I come with you?
podemos descubrir	we can discover
estoy libre	I'm free
no lo sé	I don't know (no it I-know)
aquí tienes mi número	here's my (phone) number
¿necesitas mi dirección de email?	do you need my email address?

VOCAB: merged words *contigo* and *al*

In this dialogue, we see some important examples of single words made by merging two words, as in: *contigo* ('with you'), *conmigo* ('with me'), and *al* ('to the'), which is merged from *a + el* to *al*. (Note that this happens with *el* (m), but not its feminine counterpart, *la*).

1 Write out the phrases for 'first', 'then' and 'next'.

a first _____ b then _____ c next _____

2 How would you say in Spanish:

a I'm going to see _____ c you are going to see _____

b you will/will you _____ d you are/are you _____

3 What phrases could you use to ...

a give someone your phone number? Your email address?

b ask for someone else's phone number or email address?

PRACTICE

1 Fill in the blanks with the missing words in Spanish.

- a Voy a _____ mi _____.
(I'm going **to give you** my **number**.)
- b _____ voy a _____, ¡pero _____ finde!
(**Tomorrow** I'm going **to be busy**, but **I am free this** weekend!)
- c No _____ lo _____ ... espera ... ¡ _____!
(I can't **see** it **yet** ... wait ... **here it is!**)
- d _____ no puedo ir, ¿qué _____? (If I can't go, what **am I going to do**?)
- e Voy a la cafetería _____ ver a _____. ¿Quieres venir _____?
(I'm going to the cafe **to** see **everyone**. Do you want to come **with me**?)
- f ¿ _____ el autobús _____?
(**Do you mind if we take** the bus **together**?)

2 Match the correct Spanish phrases with their English translations.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| a ¿Puedo llamarte? | 1 Can you email me? |
| b ¿Puedes escribirme un email? | 2 Can I text you? |
| c ¿Puedo enviarte un mensaje? | 3 Can I call you? |
| d ¿Puedes llamarme? | 4 Can you text me? |
| e ¿Puedo escribirte un email? | 5 Can I email you? |
| f ¿Puedes enviarme un mensaje? | 6 Can you call me? |

3 Now practise using what you've learned to create sentences in Spanish about travel.

- a I want to travel to Mexico. _____
- b Where should I spend my time? _____
- c You don't know already? _____
- d No ... Do you think that you can help me?

- e Of course! First, you can sit with me.

- f Let's eat, and I'll tell you where my favourite place is!



#LANGUAGEHACK: say exponentially more with these five booster verbs

You can start to see that saying things right in Spanish means learning how to form verbs differently between *yo*, *tú*, *nosotros* and so on. And that's even before you start changing from present tense to future or past – which is when things can really start to get messy! Sometimes – especially when you're just starting out – this can feel overwhelming.

But don't panic! You will eventually learn to handle even the messiest of those verb forms, but for now, here's a handy trick you can use to press the snooze button on learning conjugations. Learn these five 'booster' verbs and their forms, and they can do the heavy lifting for you. Simply follow them up with the dictionary form of any other verb you may want to use.

booster verb + dictionary form

Me gusta for interests

If you wanted to say 'I go out every weekend', you'd need to know the *yo* form of the verb *salir* (to go out). Or, you could use **me gusta** or **te gusta** as a booster verb. Back in your first mission, you used *me gusta* + verb to describe your interests. In this case, if you know that 'to go out' in its dictionary form is *salir*, you can combine it with *me gusta* to express the same idea:

Me gusta	+	salir	→	<i>cada fin de semana.</i>
(I like)	+	(to go out)	→	(every weekend)
Booster verb	+	dictionary form		

Voy a for future plans

To talk about the near future, in Spanish you are just as likely to hear people say, as you would in English:

Voy a ...	Vas a ...	Vamos a ...
(I am going to ...)	(You are going to ...)	(We are going to ...)

To use this 'future' form on your own, again simply put the dictionary form of the verb after *voy a*, *vas a* or *vamos a*:

Voy a comer.	I will eat /I am going to eat.
Voy a tomar el tren.	I will take the train./I am going to take the train.
Vamos a trabajar.	We will work. /We are going to work.
No vas a estudiar.	You will not study. /You aren't going to study.

Quiero for intentions

You can talk about your intentions using *quiero*:

Quiero ver la película.

I want to see the film.

¿Quieres hablar mañana?

Do **you want to speak** tomorrow?

Tengo que for obligations

This handy expression can be used to say you 'have to' or 'must' do something. For example, instead of 'I'm coming tomorrow', why not say:

Tengo que venir mañana.

I have to come tomorrow.

Tienes que ir en coche.

You have to go by car.

Puedo for possibilities

Finally, to help express yourself better, use this verb to clarify that you 'can' or 'are able to' do something. For instance, the verb *decir* (to say) can be quite tricky to get right, so you could say:

¿Puedo decir la respuesta?

Can I say the answer?

¿Puedo llamar a Pablo?

Can I call Pablo?

YOUR TURN: use the hack

- 1 Use *voy a* + verb to create sentences in the future tense.
 - a I will be busy! _____
 - b I'm going to do a lot. _____
 - c Will you call me tomorrow? _____
 - d Are you going to eat with me? _____
 - e I'm not going to travel to Bogotá. _____
- 2 Fill in the gaps to give a similar translation to the phrases provided. Use a booster verb to avoid changing the verb from its dictionary form.
 - a _____ mañana. (I'm working tomorrow.)
(trabajar = to work)
 - b _____ mucho en español. (I say a lot in Spanish.)
(decir = to say)
 - c _____ el café brasileño. (I drink Brazilian coffee.)
(beber = to drink)

CULTURE TIP:

mañana attitude

Mañana translates to 'tomorrow', but can also mean 'morning', or even more vaguely 'not today, maybe later', along the lines of 'I'll get around to it, eventually'. Time is relative, or so it would seem! This 'no rush' *mañana* attitude is a fun part of Spanish/Latin culture!

3 Translate the following into Spanish:

- a You are not very busy. _____
- b You are going to be very busy. _____
- c You will speak Spanish. _____
- d We are going to travel to Madrid. _____
- e Pablo is going to Ireland. _____
- f Sarah will not visit Berlin. _____

PUT IT TOGETHER

1 ¿Sabes que voy a tener vacaciones la próxima semana?

You've already learned to talk about the next trip you're planning (or dreaming of!). Now, use what you learned in Conversation 3 to describe what you're going to do when you get there. Use your dictionary to look up the 'me-specific' verbs and other words you need.

Try to include:

- what you think you'll do first (*Primero, voy a ...*)
- what you'll do next (*Entonces, voy a ...*)
- which sites you are going to visit (*Voy a visitar ...*)
- where you plan to go to eat or to drink (*Para comer / beber, voy a ...*)
- something you want to/will see (*Quiero ver ..., Voy a ver ...*).

○

○

○

○

○

○

○

2 Now imagine that you've met someone you'd like to hang out with later. Create two sentences you could use to:

• give them your contact details (*Aquí tienes ...*)

• ask them to call, text, or email tomorrow (*¿Puedes ...?*).

○

○

○


○

○

COMPLETING UNIT 4

Check your understanding

To check that you understand the audio, don't forget that you can always look at the transcript at the end of the book!

 **04.10** Listen to the audio rehearsal, which will ask you questions in Spanish. Use what you've learned to answer the questions in Spanish with details about yourself.

Show what you know ...

Here's what you've just learned. Write or say an example for each item in the list. Then check off the ones you know.

Ask a polite question using 'Do you mind if ...?'

Use *voy a* + dictionary form to say something you will do ...

tomorrow

this weekend

next year.

Give one sentence each using ...

'still'

and 'already'.

Use *para* to say that you are going somewhere 'in order to' do something.

Give three methods of travel in Spanish.

Say when you'll do something with ...

primero

después

and *próximo*.

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION



It's time to complete your mission: convince your friend to go with you on your dream holiday. To do this, you'll need to describe the trip of your dreams, using *yo* forms and *tú* forms to say how you and your friend would spend your trip.

Please visit www.italki.com/languagehacking

STEP 1: build your script

¿Qué vas a hacer en España/México/Colombia/Argentina ...?

Create a script you can use to tell other language hackers about your travel plans. Incorporate as many new words or phrases from this unit as possible – *ya*, *pasar el finde*, *quizás*, etc. Be sure to say:

- where you're going
- what you plan to do when you get there (for example, you could name popular monuments or tourist attractions, what you will eat or drink, etc.)
- what you want to see first (what are you most excited to explore?)
- when you'd like to go and how long you'd like to be there
- how you'll get there and how you'll get around once you're there
- who you plan to travel with.

Write down your script, then repeat it until you feel confident.

STEP 2: feedback promotes learning ... online

When the opportunity presents itself in real life, you won't always have notes at the ready, so let's emulate this by having you speak your script from memory. Make sure to revise it well!

This time, when you make your recording, you're not allowed to read your script! Instead, speak your phrases to the camera relying on very brief notes, or even better, say your script from memory.

Travel is a popular topic among language learners, so this is a script you'll want to make sure you have down solid.

CULTURE TIP:

know before you go!

This is a good time to expand on your script with some of your own research! There are many beautiful cities in Spain, Mexico, Colombia, Argentina and any of the other Spanish-speaking regions around the world. **Look into what sights there are to see** and what you can do when you get there. Also, give recommendations to other language hackers for things to do at this destination! If you can, talk to someone who lives there to get the inside scoop.

Give and get feedback from other learners - it will massively improve your Spanish!

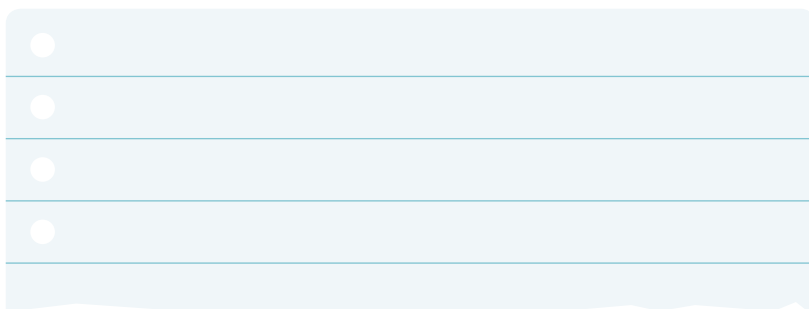
Your language partners can be a great resource for tips and stories on travel and culture! Plus, travel aspirations are a great conversation starter.

STEP 3: learn from other learners

How do other language hackers describe their travel plans and dreams? After you've uploaded your clip, **your task is to give and get feedback by voting for the holiday you'd most like to join in on.** Say why you think the place and plans sound good.

STEP 4: reflect on what you've learned

After this mission, you'll have seen and heard so many useful new words and phrases and you'll know more about new and different places to visit. What would you like to add to your script next? Your travel plans?



HEY, LANGUAGE HACKER, LOOK AT EVERYTHING YOU'VE JUST SAID!

Isn't it so much easier when you already know what you want to say? A lot of language learning involves repeatable and sometimes predictable conversations. If you take advantage of this and prepare answers you typically give often, you can be extremely confident in what you say!

Now, let's build new phrases in your script that you can use to talk about your friends and family.

¡Fantástico!

5 TALKING ABOUT FAMILY AND FRIENDS



Your mission

Imagine this – your good friend develops a serious crush on your Spanish *amigo* and asks you to play matchmaker.

Your mission is to casually talk up your friend and spark the interest of *tu amigo español* to get those two out on a date! Be prepared to describe your relationship with your friend – how you met, where he or she lives and works, and the kinds of things he or she likes to do.

This mission will get you comfortable talking about other people and using new verb forms as well as descriptive language.

Mission prep

- Talk about 'he'/'she' using the *él/ella* forms
- Talk about 'they' using the *ellos* form
- Use phrases to describe things you do with other people: *paso el tiempo, nosotros, juntos ...*
- Learn essential family vocabulary: *el marido, la hermana ...*
- Use the two forms of 'to know': *saber* and *conocer*.

BUILDING LANGUAGE FOR DESCRIBING YOUR RELATIONSHIPS

Until now, our conversations have focused mostly on describing *yo, tú* and *nosotros*. We'll build on that now with vocabulary you can use to talk about anyone else.



#LANGUAGEHACK

learn the patterns to decipher any new verb and its forms

CONVERSATION 1

What do you have planned?

Sarah has been taking online Spanish classes for a few weeks. Today she's practising with María, a Spanish tutor from Mexico. Sarah is excited to talk about the new friend she made at her language group.

🔊 **05.01** Notice how María greets Sarah. Which phrase means 'how's it going'?

HACK IT: *rephrase to get around what you haven't learned yet*

Remember that you can usually rephrase something you don't know using words and grammar that you do know. Here, María uses the phrase, *¿Qué va a hacer contigo?* (What is she going to do with you?) rather than the phrase *¿Qué van a hacer?* for 'What are you (both) going to do?' – which uses a form we'll get to soon.

María: ¡Hola Sarah, mi estudiante favorita! ¿Cómo te va?

Sarah: ¡Súper bien! De hecho, esta semana paso tiempo con una amiga nueva.

María: Me alegro de oír eso. ¿Quién es? ¿Cómo se llama?

Sarah: Se llama Julia. Es de Colombia. Trabaja como ingeniera. La conozco de mi grupo de idiomas.

María: Y ¿cuánto tiempo pasa en la ciudad? ¿Qué va a hacer contigo?

Sarah: Solo está en Madrid este mes. Mañana vamos a un bar de tapas. Después, planeamos pasar el finde juntas explorando Barcelona.

María: ¡Mi marido es de Barcelona! Le encanta. Visitamos su ciudad cada verano.

In Spanish, 'his hometown' is translated simply as *su ciudad* (his city). *Su* can mean 'his' or 'her'; which it refers to will always be clear based on the context. ¿Dónde está tu ciudad?

FIGURE IT OUT

1 What do the following mean: *¿Quién es?* *¿Cómo se llama?*

2 Three of the following statements are *falso*. Underline the incorrect parts, then write the correct version in Spanish.

a Julia is María's favourite student.

b Tomorrow, Sarah and Julia are going to a tapas bar.

c Julia works as a teacher.

d Julia is spending several months in Madrid.

e This weekend, Sarah is going to explore Barcelona with Julia.

3 You've learned a lot of words that tell you *when* something is happening. Find the words and write out a possible Spanish translation.

a this _____

d after that _____

b next _____

e every year _____

c tomorrow _____

4 Write out these phrases in Spanish:

a how's it going? _____

d in fact _____

b who? _____

e every year _____

c my favourite student _____

f I'm happy to _____



Pasar means 'to pass time' or 'to spend time' - not to be confused with 'to spend money', which uses a different verb: *gastar*.

VOCAB:

who you 'know'

Conozco is another way to say 'I know' in Spanish. In this case, it means 'know a person'. More on this in Conversation 2!

GRAMMAR TIP: -ando / -iendo as '-ing'

We saw that 'I am learning' is usually translated in Spanish as *aprendo* (I learn), but you could also use *estar* and change the dictionary form of the next word to **-ando** for most **-ar** verbs, or **-iendo** for many **-er/-ir** verbs, like *estoy hablando* (I'm speaking) or *estoy comiendo* (I'm eating). This also works for the expression *pasar (tiempo) x-ndo 'spend (time) x-ing'*, like here with *explorando*.

NOTICE

🔊 **05.02** Listen to the audio and study the table. Underline any phrases you think you could use in your own life.

Essential phrases for Conversation 1

Spanish	Meaning
¿cómo te va?	how's it going? (how to-you it-goes?)
¡ súper bien!	really well!
de hecho ...	in fact ...
→ paso/pasa tiempo	I'm/she's spending time
me alegro de ...	I'm happy to ... (me it-makes-happy of)
¿quién es?	who is it?
¿cómo se llama?	what is her name?
es de Colombia	she's from Colombia
trabaja como ...	she works as ...
→ la conozco de ...	I know her from ... (her I-know from)
¿qué va a hacer?	what is he/she going to do?
está en Madrid este mes	he/she is in Madrid this month
después	afterwards (after)
planeamos pasar el finde juntas explorando ...	we plan to spend the weekend together exploring ...
mi marido es de ...	my husband is from ...
le encanta	he loves it

1 *Me alegro de* (I am happy to) is another power expression. Use this expression in different ways by combining it with the verbs given.

Example: to know that Me alegro de saber eso.

a to see _____

b to be (in a place) _____

c to say _____

2 This conversation introduces verb forms for talking about 'he' and 'she' in Spanish. Find six instances of these verb forms and highlight them.

3 Now write out the following sets of related verbs:

- a he is _____ c we're going _____
b she is _____ d we visit _____

4 This conversation uses new phrases you can use to talk about the plans you make with other people. Find the phrases in the conversation, and write them out.

- a I'm spending time _____
b We're planning to _____
c We'll spend the weekend _____

5 Practise using *pasar* and *gastar* by filling in the sentences with the appropriate forms.

- a _____ *mi dinero en videojuegos.*
(I spend my money on videogames.)
b *Vamos a _____ el fin de semana en tu casa.*
(We will spend the weekend in your house.)
c *María _____ el día con Daniel.*
(Maria is spending the day with Daniel.)
d *Vas a _____ mucho en el restaurante. ¡Es muy caro!*
(You will spend a lot in the restaurant. It's very expensive!)
e _____ *el tiempo en mi habitación.* (I spend time in my room.)

6 Based on the placement of 'her' in *la conozco de* and *voy a verla*, translate these phrases:

- a I call her every day. _____
b I will see her tonight. _____

GRAMMAR TIP:

using objects *lo, la, los / las* ('him', 'her' and 'them')

In Unit 3 you learned to use *me* and *te* as objects of a sentence. The same works with *lo* (him), *la* (her) and *los/las* (them). They can replace people as well as masculine/feminine objects (you've already seen *lo* used for 'it'). So you can say:

...❖ *lo adoro* (I adore him/it)

...❖ *la come* (he's eating it) (e.g. *la pizza*)

...❖ *voy a verlos* (I'm going to see them)

For *gustar*, *encantar* and some other verbs, you'll instead use *le* to mean both 'him' and 'her', and *les* to mean 'them'.

If you're wondering when to use *le* or *lo / la ...* you're not alone! Even native speakers make the mistake themselves. They even have designated words for describing the mix-up - *leísmo/laísmo/loísmo*.

There are very few verbs that don't follow this pattern. One you've seen is *ser* (to be - permanent). Instead, it uses the pattern *soy* (I am), *eres* (you are), *es* (he/she/it is).

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: *él* (he) and *ella* (she)

Forming verbs for 'he' and 'she' is very easy – just remove the *s* from the *tú* form: *quieres* (you want) → *quiere* (he/she wants). You'll typically know who's being talked about from the context, so the *él* (he) or *ella* (she) is only needed for emphasis.

Examples:

Sarah quiere visitar Murcia. *¿Va a hablar?*
Sarah wants to visit Murcia. Is he going to speak?

Yo solo tengo tres días de vacaciones, pero ella tiene cuatro.
(I only have three days off, but **she has** four.)

1 Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- a _____ *ir al cine.* (*querer* – *él*)
- b Ana _____ *la República Dominicana cada verano.* (*visitar*)
- c Pedro _____ *bien.* (*hablar*)
- d _____ *en el hospital.* (*trabajar* – *ella*)
- e *Mi hermana* _____ *mucho.* (*bailar* 'to dance')

PRACTICE

Here's some new vocab that you can use to talk about your family.

🔊 05.03 Listen to the audio and follow along with the table. Repeat the words to mimic the speakers.

In English, we don't really say 'mother' and 'father' as much as we do 'mum' and 'dad'. The Spanish do the same with *mamá* and *papá*.

Familia

Spanish	Meaning	Spanish	Meaning
(mejor) amig@	(best) friend (m/f)	tío / tía	uncle / aunt
marido / mujer	husband / wife	hij@	son / daughter
novi@	boyfriend/ girlfriend	hijos	children
pareja	partner	prim@	cousin (m/f)
papá / mamá	dad / mum	compañer@ de piso	roommate/ flatmate
padres	parents		
herman@	brother / sister	gato	cat
hermanos	siblings	perro	dog
Estoy soltero	I'm single	elefante	elephant
Es complicado	It's complicated		

In casual Spanish in Spain, you'll often hear *tío/tía* refer to just 'a guy/dude' or 'a girl/lady' in general. Sprinkle these words into your conversations, and Spaniards will appreciate and notice you using their slang!

VOCAB EXPLANATION: @

When Spanish speakers are writing informally – texting, writing quick notes, or chatting online – they'll often use the @ symbol to represent 'either male or female'. I love this because it takes away the need to give the male version as the default followed by /a (e.g. *novio/a*).

For example, *Busco un compañer@ de piso* (I'm looking for a flatmate) conveys that you don't care if whoever replies is male or female.

To get you ready to use this yourself when you're texting your new Spanish-speaking friends, from now on we'll adapt *la manera española* and use @ in this book, instead of o/a.

1 Use your dictionary to fill in the last rows of the family members vocab list with other words for family members (or pets!) you have.

2 Fill in the blanks with the missing words in Spanish.

a ¿Tienes _____? (Do you have (any) **siblings**?)

b ¿_____ cerca? (**Is he** close (nearby)?)

c Mi _____ trabaja _____ médica. _____ en un hospital.
(My **mum** works **as** a doctor. **She works** at a hospital.)

d Me encanta _____ con mis _____.
(I love **spending time** with my **children**.)

e Hablo con _____ todo el tiempo y _____
_____ a menudo.
(I talk to **my brother** all the time, and I **see him** often.)

f _____ y yo siempre _____ el verano _____.
(**My family** and I, **we** always **spend** the summer **together**.)

g ¿Dónde _____? (Where does **he plan to work**?)

h _____ baila _____.
_____ encanta. (**My girlfriend** dances **every day**. **She** loves it.)

3 Answer the questions to practise creating sentences about your friends and family.

a ¿Cómo se llama tu mejor amig@? _____

b ¿Dónde vive? _____

c ¿En qué trabaja? _____

Notice that the plural for 'my' (*mis*) simply adds an *s*.

4 Now let's practise using the phrases *paso tiempo con* (I'm spending time with) and *planeamos* (we're planning to). Say who you're spending time with this weekend and describe the plans you have for the weekend together.

Example: *Paso este finde con* mis padres y mi amiga Emily.
Planeamos ir al cine.

a *Paso este finde con* _____

b *Planeamos* _____

5 Which 'me-specific' verbs would you need, to talk about the people close to you? Look up any new words you need to describe each scenario using the *él* and *ella* forms you learned.

a where specific members of your family live (*mi hermano vive en ...*)

b what your partner does for work (*mi marido escribe, mi novia ...*)

c what your best friend does to relax (*mi mejor amig@ ve la tele*).

PUT IT TOGETHER

¿Quién es tu persona favorita? Who do you spend your time with?

It could be anyone – your best friend, your parents, or your partner.

Describe someone close to you, using your dictionary to look up any new vocabulary you need.

● ... What is his/her name?

● ... Where does he or she live?

● ... Who does he/she live with?

● ... What does he/she do for work?

● ... What does he/she like to do?

You might be tempted to talk about where you 'met' someone, but we haven't learned to talk about things that happened (past tense) yet. It's coming up in Unit 7, but in the meantime, practise rephrasing sentences so you can convey the same idea using phrases you know now. This is an invaluable skill in language learning!

CONVERSATION 2

Who do you live with?

The conversation continues as Sarah and María talk about their families.

🔊 05.04 How does Sarah ask 'how long' María has been married?

Sarah: ¿Estás casada?

María: ¡Sí! Estoy casada.

Sarah: ¿Desde cuándo?

María: Estamos juntos desde hace mucho tiempo. Conozco a su familia desde hace veinte años. ¿Y tú?

Sarah: Estoy soltera.

María: ¿Con quién vives?

Sarah: Vivo en **la casa de** Juan, mi compañero de piso. Mi papá conoce a su tío. ¡Tiene un perrito adorable!

María: ¡Uf! ¡No me gustan los perros! Siempre rompen cosas.

Sarah: El perro de Juan nunca rompe nada. Es muy bueno.

María: Seguro que es un trozo de pan, ¡como tú!

To describe a person's possessions in Spanish, rephrase your sentences to use 'of', in this case: *la casa de Juan* (the house of Juan).

FIGURE IT OUT

1 How do you say the following in Spanish?

a Are you married? _____

b like you _____

c I'm single _____

2 Answer the questions in Spanish:

- a How long does María say she's been married?
María está con su marido desde hace _____.
- b At whose house does Sarah live?
Vive en _____.
- c Is Sarah married or single? _____
- d How does María feel about dogs? _____

3 Is the word *familia* masculine or feminine? How do you know?

NOTICE

05.05 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 2

Spanish	Meaning
estoy casada	I'm married
¿desde cuándo?	since when?/for how long?
Estamos juntos desde ...	we have been together for (since) ...
conozco a su familia ...	I have known (I-know) his family for ...
estoy soltera	I'm single
¿con quién vives?	who do you live with? (with whom you-live?)
la casa de Juan	Juan's house (the house of Juan)
mi papá conoce a su tío	my dad knows his uncle
¡tiene un perrito adorable!	he has an adorable little dog! (he-has a little-dog adorable!)
siempre	always
nunca rompe nada	(he) never breaks anything.
seguro que ...	surely (sure that) ...
es un trozo de pan	it's a sweetie (it's a piece of bread)
¡como tú!	like you!

GRAMMAR TIP:

prepositions at the start

Spanish sentences can't end in prepositions (words like *a, de, después, con, en*). But it's easy to change your word order if you imagine a more formal way of saying the sentence in English: 'With whom do you live?'

Example:

Who are you looking at?
¿A quién miras?

It helps to learn words in pairs of opposites, like *nunca* and *siempre*.

1 Find the three he/she verb forms in Spanish and highlight them.

2 Using the phrase for 'Juan's house' as a model, how would you say 'my brother's dog' in Spanish? And how would you say 'my friend's father'?

3 Based on the word order of *¿Con quién vives?*, how do you think you would ask the following?

- a Where are you coming from? _____
- b What are you writing with? _____
- c What time (*hora*) does the class start (at)? _____

VOCAB EXPLANATION: *saber* and *conocer* (to know)

Spanish has two ways of saying 'to know'. Most of the time you'll use *saber*, which implies that you know a piece of information, or how to do something. The other form, *conocer* implies that you're familiar with something, or that you know a person.

Generally, you'll use *conocer* instead of *saber* if you can replace the word 'know' with 'know of' or 'be familiar with'. For example, you can't really say 'I know of how to drive', but you can say 'I am familiar with Madrid' (*conozco Madrid*) or 'I know of Juan' (*conozco a Juan*).

VOCAB: *conocer* 'to meet'

Conocer is a really useful verb because it also means 'to meet', as in *he conocido a mucha gente hoy* (I met lots of people today). Notice that usually the verb *conocer* is followed by **a** when it's used before people.

Example: *Sé que eres español.* I know that you are Spanish.
¡Conozco esta canción! I know this song!

Keep in mind that the *yo* forms of 'I know' look very different to what you'd expect from their other forms:

saber: sé, sabes, sabe *conocer: conozco, conoces, conoce*

1 Try it yourself. Choose between *saber* and *conocer* based on the context.

- a *Conozco/Sé ese libro.*
- b *¿Conoces/Sabes a qué hora empieza el concierto?*
- c *Conocemos/Sabemos a Pedro.*
- d *¿Ella conoce/sabe nadar? (to swim)*



#LANGUAGEHACK: learn the patterns to decipher any new verb and its forms

You may have noticed some spelling changes between verb forms of certain words:

e changes to *ie* *tener* → *tienes* *entender* → *entiende*

o changes to *ue* *recordar* → *recuerdo* *almorzar* → *almuerzo*

Not all forms of Spanish verbs undergo these vowel changes. So how do you know which do and which don't?

Just ask yourself this question: **does it end in either -r or -mos?**

If yes, then it keeps the single vowel sound.

Knowing this, you'll be ready to confidently use so many Spanish verb forms before you know it.

When a word ends in certain letters like *-r*, the last syllable gets the stress. This just so happens to be the case for all dictionary forms of verbs: *dormir*, *recordar*, *entender*. Similarly, when it ends in *-mos*, this effectively adds an extra syllable to the word. Because in Spanish, the second-last syllable typically gets the stress, the same letter as in the dictionary form will be stressed:

cerramos (we close), *encontramos* (we find),

tenemos (we have), *dormimos* (we sleep)

If no, then it often uses the two-vowel sound.

Many verb forms you've been using up to now end in a vowel or *-s*, and that typically decides in Spanish that *the syllable before it is the one that gets the stress in the word*. Stress in the word gives Spanish its fun vowel-sound changing feature, so this is why what would be an *e* (if unstressed) becomes *ie* ('yeh' sound), and what would be an *o* (if unstressed) becomes a *ue* ('weh' sound). This is the case for the *yo*, *tú* and *él/ella* forms, because these all end in a vowel or *s*. Let's see it in action!

<i>queremos, quiero</i>	to want, I want
<i>entender, entiendes</i>	to understand, you understand
<i>recordamos, recuerdas</i>	we remember, you remember
<i>encontrar, encuentro</i>	to find, I find

Other patterns to remember: -go and -oy

Next, there are what I like to call 'go verbs', because their yo form ends in **-go** rather than simply -o. These verbs also make the **e-*ie*** (or **e-*i***) switch:

<i>tener, tenemos, tengo, tienes</i>	to have, we have, I have, you have
<i>venir, venimos, vengo, viene</i>	to come, we come, I come, he/she comes
<i>decir, decimos, digo, dices</i>	to say, we say, I say, you say
<i>hacer, hacemos, hago, haces</i>	to do, we do, I do, you do

And finally, the **two 'to be' verbs**, and **one-syllable verbs** tend to **end yo forms in -oy**:

<i>estar: estoy, estás, está</i>	<i>ser: soy, eres, es</i>
<i>ir: voy, vas, va</i>	<i>dar: doy, das, da</i>

With this in mind, you shouldn't need to look up conjugation tables, or be told to just memorize each verb as you see it!

This is easy to remember, because -oy is yo backwards!

GRAMMAR TIP:

vowel changes

There aren't as many, but some verbs change the *e* to an *i* instead. A few worth knowing for now are:

- pedir (to ask for),
- pedimos (we ask for),
- pido (I ask for),
- pides (you ask for).

YOUR TURN: use the hack

1 Read the sentences and insert the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- a _____ a España cada verano. (volar)
(I fly to Spain every summer.)
- b _____ la ventana. (cerrar) (We're closing the window.)
- c ¿_____ comer ahora? (preferir) (Do you prefer to eat now?)

2 Turn these sentences around by changing a yo form to a tú form, or vice versa.

- a Tengo muchos libros. _____
- b Das el dinero a Marta. _____
- c Dices algo raro cada día. _____

PRACTICE

1 Practise answering questions about your relationships with other people.

- a ¿Estás casad@, solter@ o tienes novi@? _____
- b ¿Tienes hijos? ¿Cuántos? Sí/No ... _____
- c ¿Con quién vives? Vivo ... _____

2 A useful phrase to know in Spanish is *quiero decir* (literally 'I want to say'), which translates as 'I mean'. Use this phrase to say the following:

a Do you mean ...? _____

b he/she means _____

c she means _____

3 Fill in the blanks with the missing words in Spanish.

a _____ a mi mejor _____ desde hace cinco años.

(I have **known** my best **friend** for 5 years. **We're a lot alike.**)

b Hoy es el **cumple** _____ .

(Today **is my mother's** birthday.)

Remember to use the present tense with the word *desde* - so you'd say 'I know ...' rather than 'I have known'.

Cumple is a short, casual way of saying *cumpleaños*.

PUT IT TOGETHER

Build on the script you wrote from Conversation 1. Write four or five sentences about someone close to you, in which you describe things like:

••• how long you've known him/her (*conocer + desde*)

••• how long you've been together or married (*juntos + desde*)

••• what you are going to/planning to do together (*vamos a ... planeamos ...*).

•

•

•

•

•

•

•

CONVERSATION 3

There are four of us

The conversation gets a bit more detailed now, as Sarah tries to describe the people she has met.

🔊 05.06 How do you say in Spanish, 'They are not ...'?

Sarah: ¿Tienes hijos?

María: Sí, **somos cuatro**. Tenemos dos maravillosos hijos. Se llaman Mónica y Pedro.

Sarah: Sus nombres son muy bonitos.

María: ¿Crees que algún día vas a echar raíces?

Sarah: **No estoy segura**. Quizás algún día.

María: ¿Y si conoces a alguien especial en Madrid? Los españoles tienen algo especial.

Sarah: Ya ... pero los hombres españoles no parecen ... ¿cómo se dice en español 'my type'?

María: No parecen tu tipo, sí, entiendo. ¡Pero nunca se sabe!

You can use the phrase **somos ...** or 'we are (number)' to say how many of you there are in a group. It's a useful phrase in a lot of scenarios, from describing your family to telling a waiter in a restaurant how big a table you need. **Somos** is the **nosotros** form of **ser** (to be) that means 'we are' in a permanent sense.

When you can't think of the word you want, substitute similar words you already know. For instance, we could use **no lo sé** in place of **no estoy segura** in this conversation.



FIGURE IT OUT

1 Use context to answer the questions, and highlight the relevant phrases in the conversation.

- a How many people are in María's family? _____
- b Does Sarah ever want to have a family? _____
- c How do you say in Spanish 'they are not ... 'my type''?

2 What do the following phrases mean?

- a *tenemos dos hijos* _____
- b *¿cómo se dice en español ...?* _____
- c *hombres españoles* _____

3 Find these phrases in the conversation and write them out.

- a their names are _____
- b they don't seem _____
- c you never know _____

NOTICE

GRAMMAR TIP:

adjective endings –
o/a, os/as

Similar to how you'll change an o to an a when you're describing a female (*bonito* – *bonita*, *pequeño* – *pequeña*), you'll also add an s when talking about multiple people (*curioso* – *curiosos*). Unlike English, Spanish also adds an s to any adjectives that come after a plural (*las hermanas altas* 'the tall sisters').

Y si is a useful phrase that can be used as 'what if' in English: *Y si conoces ...*

VOCAB: se
as 'one' or 'it'

When you want to say 'you', in the sense of 'people in general', in many cases you can use the *él/ella* form with *se*, for example, *en Madrid se habla español*. Here, *nunca se sabe* has the sense of 'it is never known' or 'one never knows', just like *¿cómo se dice?* means 'how is it said?.'

🔊 05.07 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 3

Spanish	Meaning
¿tienes hijos?	do you have children?
somos cuatro	there are four of us (we-are four)
Tenemos dos maravillosos hijos	we have two wonderful children
se llaman ...	their names are (themselves they-call) ...
sus nombres son muy bonitos	their names are very pretty
¿vas a echar raíces?	are you going to settle down? (you-go to to-put-down roots)
no estoy segura	I'm not sure
y si conoces a alguien	what if you meet someone special
los españoles tienen algo especial	the Spanish have something special
¿cómo se dice ...?	how do you say ...?
no parecen	they don't seem
nunca se sabe	you never know

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: *ellos/ellas* (they)

When you want to talk about multiple people, like *Sarah y Julia* and what they do, you'll need to use a new form: *ellos/ellas*.

Creating the *ell@s* form is simple: just **add an *n* to the *él/ella* form** you have learned:

<i>hablar</i>	<i>(él) habla</i>	<i>(ellos) hablan</i>
<i>vivir</i>	<i>(ella) vive</i>	<i>(ellas) viven</i>

There are very few verbs that don't follow this pattern. One you've seen already includes ***son*** (they are) from *ser*.

1 Fill in the gaps with the correct form, using the verb suggested.

- | | | |
|----------|--|-------------------|
| a | <i>Ellos</i> _____ <i>las películas.</i> | <i>(adorar)</i> |
| b | <i>¡Mis hermanos</i> _____ <i>aquí para practicar!</i> | <i>(estar)</i> |
| c | <i>Ellas</i> _____ <i>en el hospital.</i> | <i>(trabajar)</i> |
| d | <i>Carlos y Javier</i> _____ <i>juntos.</i> | <i>(vivir)</i> |
| e | <i>Ellos</i> _____ <i>ir al cine.</i> | <i>(querer)</i> |
| f | <i>Ellas</i> _____ <i>sobre las noticias.</i> | <i>(hablar)</i> |
| g | <i>Pablo y Sarah</i> _____ <i>pasta juntos.</i> | <i>(comer)</i> |
| h | <i>Ellos</i> _____ <i>visitar Chile pronto.</i> | <i>(esperar)</i> |
| i | <i>Sarah y Julia</i> _____ <i>mañana a Perú.</i> | <i>(viajar)</i> |

Ellas is used for a group of females, but since *ellos* is used for a group of males, or a group made up of men and women, we'll use ***ellos*** to refer to 'they' from here on.

PRACTICE

- 1 Complete the table with the new verb forms you've seen so far in the unit. They are extremely useful, so when you're done, close your eyes and randomly point at one of the forms and make a sentence with it. Do this five times.

dictionary form	yo	tú	él/ella	nosotros	ellos
querer					
ser					
ir					
conocer					
decir					

- 2 How would you say 'I'm sure!' in Spanish? _____

- 3 Match the Spanish phrases with the correct English translations.

- | | |
|-----------|------------------|
| a vamos | 1 we are |
| b van | 2 they are |
| c somos | 3 they know |
| d saben | 4 we are going |
| e son | 5 they are going |
| f sabemos | 6 we know |

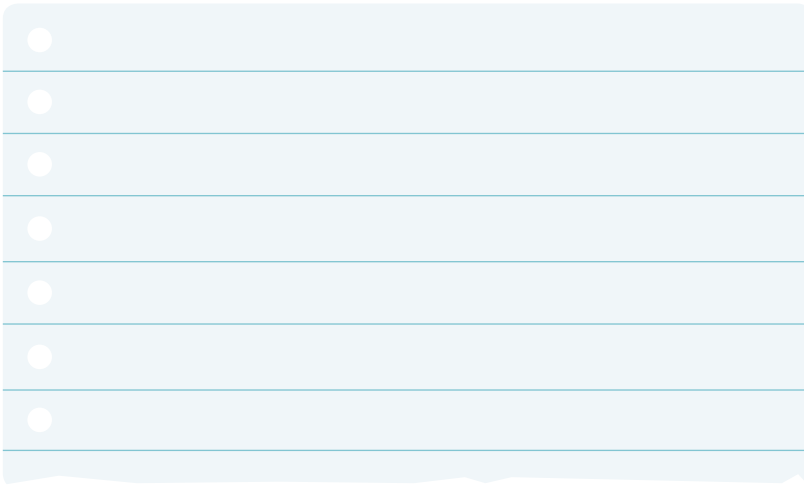
- 4 Fill in the gaps for each question/answer pair.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| a ¿Tu hermano es estudiante? | No, ¡_____ ingeniero! |
| b ¿Tus padres están en el trabajo? | No, ¡_____ de vacaciones! |
| c ¿Tu amigo va a viajar contigo? | No, ¡_____ a viajar con mi primo! |
| d ¿Tus hermanas van a leer los libros? | No, _____ a ver la televisión. |

PUT IT TOGETHER


You should now have most of the 'me-specific' vocab you need to talk about your family and friends! Create a script of at least four sentences that describes people you know. Use the new forms you learned for *él/ella* and *ellos* to talk about:

- your parents, children, or other family members – their names, ages, where they live, or what they like
- your friends – how you know them, what they do or what they like
- your co-workers – what they say, what you are working on together
- your pets, people you admire, or anyone else you want to describe!



COMPLETING UNIT 5

Check your understanding

 **05.08** Listen to this audio rehearsal, which asks questions in Spanish, followed by a short answer.

- Combine the answer with the verb in the question to give the full answer.
- Feel free to pause or replay the audio as often as you need.

Example: ¿Con quién vive Juan? Con su mamá. → Vive con su mamá.

Show what you know ...

Here's what you've just learned. Write or say an example for each item in the list. Then tick off the ones you know.

- Give the Spanish phrases for:
 - 'my mum' and 'my dad'
 - 'your sister' and 'your brother'
 - and another family member of your choice.
- Give two phrases you can use to express how you 'spend time' or what you 'plan' to do.
- Give one sentence each using:
 - the *él* verb form to describe what someone (m) you know works as
 - the *ellos* verb form to describe what some friends of yours are doing right now.
 - Say something you plan to do with another person using *nosotros* and *juntos*.
 - Use *conocer* to say something or someone you 'know' (are familiar with).

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION



It's time to complete your mission: talk up your friend to spark a love connection between her and *tu amigo español*. To do this, you'll need to prepare a description of your friend and explain the story of how you met.

Please visit www.italki.com/languagehacking

STEP 1: build your script

¿Quién es la persona más importante en tu vida?

Use the phrases you've learned so far and your 'me-specific' vocab to build scripts about your favourite person. Be sure to:

- say who it is (*mi amig@, mi herman@ ...*)
- explain why the person is so important to you (*él, ella*)
- say how long you've known each other (*conocer + desde*)
- describe their characteristics, jobs, family, etc. (*su*)

Write down your script, then repeat it until you feel confident.

STEP 2: keep it real ... online

This is a script you'll use and build on over and over when you talk about your near and dear in Spanish in real life. Start using it right away to fill the gaps in your script as soon as you can! So, go online, find the mission for Unit 5, and share your recording with the community.

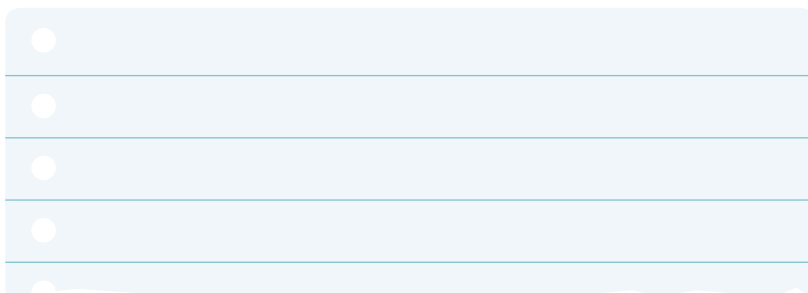
Use your language to communicate with real people! You need to speak and use a language for it to start taking hold in your long-term memory. And it's the best way to see and feel your progress.

STEP 3: learn from other learners

Remember, your missions help you, but also help others expand their vocabulary. **Your task is to ask a follow-up question in Spanish to at least three different people**, to inspire them to build on their scripts just a little bit more.

STEP 4: reflect on what you've learned

What new words or phrases did you realize you need to start filling your gaps? Always write them down!



HEY, LANGUAGE HACKER, YOU'RE OVER HALFWAY THERE!

You have successfully overcome one of the biggest challenges in language-learning: getting started and then *keeping it up*. Momentum will take you a long way in learning Spanish quickly, so you should feel good about how far you've come. Always focus on what you can do today that you couldn't do yesterday.

Next up: you'll apply what you know to prepare for conversations at the Spanish dinner table.

¡Adelante!

6 HAVING SOME FOOD, DRINK AND CONVERSATION



Your mission

Imagine this – you’ve discovered an incredible restaurant near **tu casa**, so you invite a new Mexican friend to join you there. You feel **muy elegante**. But it turns out (to your horror) that your friend has heard bad things about it. **Puf**, he says, **es ordinario ...**

Your mission is to convince your friend to come with you to the restaurant. Be prepared to **give your opinion** and say **why you disagree**. Back it up with details of why the place is so **de moda** – **describe the food you like** and **why you like it**.

This mission will help you become comfortable agreeing or disagreeing and explaining your point of view, as well as talking about food and restaurants – a very important topic.

Mission prep

- ...❖ Learn phrases and etiquette for dining out: **puede ponerme, me gustaría**
- ...❖ Use food and drink vocabulary: **agua, una copa de vino**
- ...❖ Use expressions for giving opinions and recommendations: **en mi opinión, me parece bien**
- ...❖ Make comparisons using **más, mejor, peor**.

BUILDING LANGUAGE FOR SPANISH DINNER CONVERSATION

Mealtimes in Spain eat up a decent chunk of the day. Lunch can last for two hours, and dinner may not start until 10 pm or later, and go on all night. These late-night meals are meant to be a slow, relaxing way to unwind from the day, and for family and friends to connect over good food and conversation. Let’s make sure you understand the different ways you’ll interact with those you know, as well as with waiters when eating out.



#LANGUAGEHACK

sound more fluent with conversation connectors

CONVERSATION 1

For me, I'll have ...

CULTURE TIP: tapas

Tapas are Spanish finger foods that can consist of almost anything – meats, seafood, potatoes, bread and olives are all popular choices. They're a staple of bars and cafés all over Spain and are available to order throughout the day. My personal favourite is **patatas bravas**, potatoes with a spicy tomato sauce.

In Spanish restaurants, you'll see the familiar words *menú* and *aperitivo* – but be careful! A Spanish *menú* is not the full selection of food to choose from, like you may be used to (that's *la carta*). *Un menú* is a set menu of multiple courses with a *precio fijo* ('fixed price' – similar to a daily special). And a Spanish *aperitivo* is actually an appetizer! For the main meal, look for *el plato principal*.

There's also a certain way to order in Spanish restaurants, depending on which type of establishment you're in. In nice restaurants, you'll need to use formal Spanish, with the *usted* form.

🔊 06.01 Sarah and her friend Julia sit down to eat at a tapas bar in Barcelona. What phrase does the waiter use to ask, 'Are you ready?'

Around lunch time, everyone's greeting changes from *buenos días* (good morning) to *buenas tardes* (good afternoon/evening).

CULTURE TIP: water, mineral water and gas in Spain

Tap water in Spain is perfectly safe to drink and has been for decades. However, it sometimes tastes a little funny, which is why locals may ask for **agua mineral** (mineral water) when they're out. **You might want to specify *sin gas*** (literally 'without gas') if you don't want to be surprised with carbonated water!

Sarah: Tengo hambre. ¡Ah, aquí está el bar!

Waiter: **Buenas tardes**, señoritas. ¿Mesa para dos?

Julia: Buenas tardes, señor. Sí, somos dos.

Waiter: Aquí tienen su mesa y aquí está la carta.

Julia: Muy bien. Por ahora, queremos una **botella de agua**.
¡Gracias!

Waiter: ¿Ya saben qué van a pedir?

Julia: ¡Sí! Ya lo sabemos.

Sarah: Eh ... Para mí, unas **patatas bravas**, por favor.

Julia: Y yo voy a tomar gazpacho.

Waiter: ¿Y para beber?

Julia: ¿Vas a beber algo?

Sarah: ¿Puede ponerme una sangría? Julia, ¿qué te apetece?

Julia: Una cola para mí.

Waiter: ¡Enseguida!

FIGURE IT OUT

- 1 Look back at the conversation and highlight the details:
 - a What does Sarah order to eat? And to drink?
 - b Which verb forms in the conversation are formal?
- 2 What does the phrase *Ya lo sabemos* mean? _____
- 3 Highlight the phrases Sarah and Julia use to order the following:
 - a patatas bravas
 - b gazpacho
 - c a cola
- 4 Write out the following phrases in Spanish.
 - a And to drink? _____
 - b Are you going to drink something? _____

CULTURE EXPLANATION: when to use *usted/ustedes*

The *usted* verb form is reserved for more formal situations in Spain, while in many parts of Latin America, it's more commonly used to interact with anyone you don't know. If you're ever unsure, it's safe to open with *usted* (to address one person), or *ustedes* (to address multiple people).

Some people prefer to use *usted/ustedes* more, but the levels of formality are breaking down with time, even with those you've just met. I've found many Spanish speakers to share the Irish philosophy that a stranger is just a friend you haven't met yet!

HACK IT: plural 'you'

Believe it or not, there are even more ways to say 'you' in Spanish than those you've seen so far!

One of those is *vosotros*, and it's in common use in Spain as an informal plural 'you'. This gets its own special verb form that you would have to learn separately ... but here's a trick to avoid learning it until you're more used to the language:

You can actually just *choose not to* use this form for now, and use the *ustedes* form instead (which is much easier to learn). This is the way Latin Americans do it, because they don't use the *vosotros* form, so Spanish speakers are well used to hearing the *ustedes* alternative.

The same way that us Irish say 'yous' or some Americans say 'y'all', you can choose to say 'you plural' as if you were Latin American – even if you're in Spain. It's no big deal! *¿Entienden?*

GRAMMAR TIP: forming *usted* and *ustedes*

Did you notice when the waiter in the conversation said *tienen*? This is the formal form for talking to a group of people directly: the *ustedes* form, which acts exactly like the *ellos* form you already know. To use *usted* (formal you), simply apply the *él/ella* form you know (ending in -a or -e, like *habla*, *viaja*, *tiene*). Julia does this when she said *Puede ponerme ...* To form *ustedes* just add an *n* to this (the same as for the *ellos* form) like *hablan*, *viajan*, *tienen*.

VOCAB: *vos* as 'thou'

In Argentina, *vos* is still in common use (to some Spaniards, this almost sounds like 'thou' would to an English speaker). I personally love using this form, and it's easy enough to learn if you ever decide to.

NOTICE

🔊 06.02 Listen to the audio and study the table.

CULTURE TIP: *serve me!*

In Spain, you'll notice customers and waiters using much more direct language than we're used to in English. 'Get me a beer' (*Ponme una cerveza*) is perfectly fine to say in a bar. It translates to 'Serve me a beer!', and the waiter would happily oblige!

Essential phrases for Conversation 1

Spanish	Meaning
tengo hambre	I'm hungry (I-have hunger)
aquí está ...	here's ...
... el bar	... the bar
... su mesa	... your (formal) table
... la carta	... the menu
buenas tardes, señoritas/señor	good evening ladies/sir
¿mesa para dos?	table for two?
por ahora	for now
queremos ...	we'll have ... (we-want)
... una botella de agua	... a bottle of water
¿saben ya qué van a pedir?	do you (pl) know what you're having? (you-(pl)-know already what you-(pl)-go to to-request?)
para mí ...	for me ...
yo voy a tomar ...	I'll have ... (I am-going to to-take)
¿y para beber?	and to drink?
¿vas a ... algo?	are you going to ... something?
puede ponerme ...	can you get me ... (you-can to-put-me ...)
¿qué te apetece?	What looks good to you? (what to-you is-appealing)
¡enseguida!	right away!

While you may expect *por* as a translation of 'for', there are also some situations where *para* is used instead, such as if it implies a recipient.

Remember that *qué* (with the accent) means 'what', not 'that' (*que*).

A quick transition like this to emphasize your choice is a great example of when you'd actually say *yo*. Just as in English, you'd emphasize 'and I'll have ...'.

- 1 Look at *tengo hambre* in the phrase list. How does English express this feeling differently? _____
- 2 Notice the way that 'I'll have' is phrased literally in Spanish. What is the meaning of the verb *tomar*? _____

3 Write out which phrases are used to ...

a ... order a bottle of water _____

b ... order a *sangría* _____

4 Find the four phrases used to place an order, and highlight them. Then replay the audio to practise your pronunciation of these phrases.

a I'll have ...

c For me ...

b We'll have ...

d Can you get me ...

5 Match the verbs with their corresponding meaning in English.

a *sé*

1 You want?

b *sabemos*

2 we know

c *¿Sabes?*

3 Are you going to drink?

d *quiero*

4 You know?

e *¿Quieres?*

5 I'm going to drink

f *¿Vas a beber?*

6 I want

g *voy a beber*

7 I know

PRACTICE

1 ¿Vas a ... algo? (Are you going to ... something?) is a power phrase. Practise adapting this power phrase now. Complete the questions by filling in the gap with the appropriate verb.

- a ¿Vas a _____ algo? ¡Sí, sushi!
- b ¿Vas a _____ algo? ¡Sí, vino!
- c ¿Vas a _____ algo? ¡Sí, regalos! (gifts)

2 Fill in the blanks with the missing words in Spanish.

- a ¿Qué _____ ?
(What **are you (plural) going to drink?**)
- b ¡Otra _____, por favor! (Another **bottle of water**, please!)
- c Yo _____ vino tinto y _____ vino blanco.
(**I'll have** the red wine, and **she'll have** the white wine.)
- d _____ qué _____ comer. (**We know** what **we want** to eat.)
- e ¿ _____ tienes _____? (Are you **already hungry?**)

Now look at some more important vocab related to eating and drinking. Before you head to a Spanish café or restaurant, it's a good idea to learn the names of your favourite dishes in advance.

I'd suggest you also bring a pocket dictionary or use one of the dictionary apps/sites recommended in our Resources, on your phone. You may want to try something on the specials board! It's OK to order a dish even if you don't know what it is. Live an adventure!

Eating and drinking vocab

Spanish	Meaning	Spanish	Meaning
tener hambre (tengo hambre)	to be hungry (I'm hungry)	verduras	vegetables
tener sed (tengo sed)	to be thirsty (I'm thirsty)	vaso	glass
comer (yo como)	to eat (I'm eating)	desayuno	breakfast
beber (yo bebo)	to drink (I'm drinking)	comida	lunch
bebida	drink	cena	dinner
cocinar	to cook/prepare	carne	meat
comida	food/meal	pollo	chicken
tomar (yo tomo)	to take (I take / I'll have)	ternera	beef
yo desayuno	I'm having breakfast	marisco	seafood
almorzar (yo almuerzo)	to have lunch / (I'm having lunch)	ensalada	salad
cenar (yo ceno)	to have dinner (I'm having dinner)	zumos/jugo de naranja	orange juice
acabar	to finish		
¡Sorpréndeme!	Surprise me!		
¿Qué me recomienda(s)?	What do you recommend?		

CULTURE TIP:

tortilla de patatas

In Spain, **tortilla de patatas** is a beloved dish similar to a thick omelette. Fancy some fun debate practice? Ask a group of Spaniards whether **tortilla** is best with or without onions ... you'll be surprised at the passionate opinions on this topic!

CULTURE TIP:

soy vegetariano

Some parts of Spain and Latin America can be tricky for vegetarians. If you say you're a **vegetariano** or ask for something without meat (**sin carne**), you're likely to be served a dish covered in fish. To play it safe, I suggest you learn to say **sin carne y sin pescado**, or ask what ingredients are used. I found out by accident that saying 'I'm on a diet' (**estoy a dieta**) is often the quickest way to get a dish full of veggies!

- 3 What are your favourite foods? What could you imagine yourself asking for in a restaurant in Spain or Latin America? Add four more food or drink items you would order in Spanish to the table. Then add two more phrases you might use to interact with the waiting staff.

PUT IT TOGETHER

- 1 Role play ordering your favourite foods and drink in a Spanish restaurant. Take inspiration from what you've learned in this unit (and use your dictionary).

¡Hoy tienes hambre y sed! So you'll order a starter, a main course, two drinks and a dessert. You've already seen *la carta* and it conveniently has all your favourite foods on it!

While you may be tempted to translate 'ask for' as 'pedir por', the 'for' is implied in *pedir*. No need for it! Think of it as the way we use the word 'request' in English. The same works for *esperar*, which means both 'to wait' and 'to wait for': *te espero* (I'm waiting for you).

The verb *aprovechar* generally means 'to take advantage of' (but in a good way), so it makes sense that in Spain, the equivalent of 'Enjoy your meal!' or 'Bon appétit!' is *¡Que aproveche!* (May you take (full) advantage of it!).

Camarero: ¿Sabe ya qué va a pedir?

Tú: _____

Camarero: ¡Ah, buena elección! ¿Y como segundo plato?

Tú: _____

Camarero: Veo que hoy va a comer bien. ¿Y para beber?

Tú: _____ y _____

Camarero: ¡Enseguida!

(30 minutos después ...)

Tú: _____

(Call the waiter over.)

Camarero: ¿Ha acabado?

Tú: _____

(Say yes, and that you have already chosen your dessert.)

Camarero: ¿Qué va a pedir?

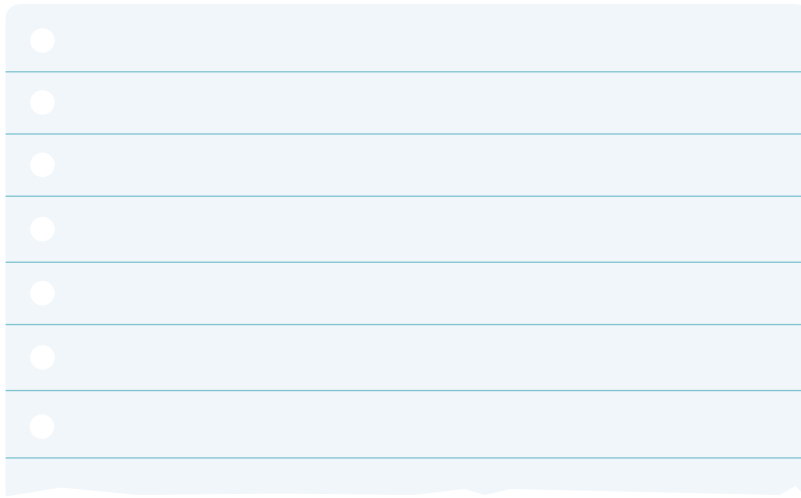
Tú: _____

Camarero: ¡Aquí tiene! ¡Que aproveche!

2 ¿Qué quieres cocinar? ¿Qué necesitas comprar para cocinarlo?

Create three 'me-specific' phrases in which you describe your normal mealtime routine. Use the vocab you've learned in this unit, as well as any new words you need from your dictionary. Try to include:

- what you're planning to eat (*comer, tomar*)
- what you're planning to drink (*beber*)
- whether you normally cook at home (*cocinar en casa*), have dinner in a restaurant (*cenar en un restaurante*), or microwave a pizza (*hacer una pizza en el microondas*).



CONVERSATION 2

In my opinion ...

CULTURE TIP: *debate!*

Spanish speakers aren't afraid to raise controversial subjects in conversations. After a heated debate, people get back to being the best of friends. If a tricky-to-discuss topic comes up, this means that the other person is interested in hearing your opinion! If you aren't comfortable talking about the topic, feel free to mention this – but why not try to offer a basic opinion, to get some interesting practice time!

VOCAB: *quiero vs. me gustaría*

You know how to use *quiero* for 'I want,' but another, softer option is *me gustaría* or 'I would like,' which works better in formal situations.

Sarah and Julia discover they don't quite see eye to eye on where to go in Barcelona.

🔊 06.03 How does Sarah say 'you're right'?

Julia: ¿Adónde vamos mañana?

Sarah: *Me gustaría* ver la Sagrada Familia!

Julia: No sé ... Hay tantos edificios en Barcelona y eliges el más feo ... ¡Aún está en construcción! Además, ¡hay demasiados turistas!

Sarah: ¡Ojo! ¡Hay que verla! Es que ... es muy bonita, ¡y muy famosa también!

Julia: ¿Cómo? Ir a la playa es mejor y más relajante.

Sarah: Tienes razón ... Claro que hay menos gente allí ... ¡porque es aburrido!

Julia: Venga, quiero ver el mar Mediterráneo y tomar el sol, no dar un paseo.

Sarah: Vale, vale. Vamos a hacer un trato. Vamos a la Sagrada Familia por la mañana, porque hay menos turistas. Entonces, por la tarde, podemos ir a la playa de la Barceloneta.

Julia: ¡Estoy de acuerdo! Ese plan me suena bien.

FIGURE IT OUT

- Find the following details in the conversation and highlight them.
 - Where does Sarah think they should visit? What about Julia?
 - What is Julia's opinion of the Sagrada Familia? What about Sarah?
 - What phrase shows that Sarah and Julia will make a compromise?
- Circle these phrases:
 - there are too many tourists
 - there are fewer people
 - there are fewer tourists



3 Answer the questions in Spanish using the English responses provided.

a ¿Qué tenemos que ver? → We need to see the Mediterranean Sea.

b ¿Por qué quieres ir a la playa? → Because the beach is more relaxing.

4 Write out the Spanish phrases for:

a obviously _____

c Sounds good! _____

b I disagree _____

d There are so many ... _____

5 Use context to deduce the meaning of the words in bold used to describe the conversation:
Julia dice que ...

a la Sagrada Familia es **mejor que** la playa _____

b la playa tiene **menos** gente que la Sagrada Familia _____

c hay tantas iglesias y edificios en Barcelona y Sarah elige **el más** feo _____

NOTICE

GRAMMAR TIP:

hay tantos ... hay demasiados

When you're walking around a big city in Spain, you can use *hay* to exclaim ¡*Hay tantos ...!* (There are so many ...!) or ¡*Hay demasiados ...!* (There are too many ...!). Both *tantos* and *demasiados* change their endings to match the word that follows, just like you've seen with *much@/s*. So you can also have *tantas razones* or *demasiadas personas*. Similarly, *tanto* is 'so much' and *demasiado* is 'too much'.

Hay que is a useful expression, which means that whatever follows must be done. In this conversation, *hay que verla* means 'it must be seen!' or 'I have to see it!' Since the next word (the verb) will be in the dictionary form, you can use it to express anything that 'needs' to happen. For example: ¡*Hay que comer tortilla de patatas!* (You really should eat a Spanish omelette!).

The word *menos* (less) looks a lot like 'minus'.

🔊 06.04 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 2

Spanish	Meaning
¿adónde vamos?	(to) where are we going?
me gustaría ...	I would like ... (me it-would-please)
claro que ...	clearly ... (clear that)
gente allí!	people here!
hay tantos ...	there are so many ...
el más feo	the ugliest (the more ugly)
además, hay demasiados ...	besides, there are too many ...
¡hay que verla!	it has to be seen!
¿cómo?	what / sorry? (how?)
ir a la playa es mejor	going to the beach is better
tienes razón	you're right (you-have reason)
tomar el sol	sunbathe (take the sun)
dar un paseo	go for a walk (give a walk)
vale	OK
por la mañana	in the morning
hay menos turistas	there are fewer tourists
por la tarde	in the afternoon
podemos ir a la playa	we can go to the beach
me parece bien	seems good to me
¡estoy de acuerdo!	all right! (I-am of agreement)
me suena bien	sounds good to me

- 1 Find the phrase for 'you're right'. How does this phrase translate literally into English? What expression from Conversation 1 also uses *tener* in Spanish instead of 'to be' as in English? _____

2 Highlight the words used for comparison, then write them down.

- a the ugliest _____ d more _____
b better _____ e too many _____
c less/fewer _____ f so many _____

3 How would you write the following in Spanish?

- a I know that _____
b you know that there are _____
c we need _____
d we need so many _____
e I need too many _____

4 Each of these phrases is useful for expressing your opinion in Spanish.

Match the Spanish phrase to its English counterpart.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------|
| a <i>en mi opinión</i> | 1 I agree |
| b <i>no estoy de acuerdo</i> | 2 you're right |
| c <i>tienes razón</i> | 3 In my opinion |
| d <i>estoy de acuerdo</i> | 4 I don't agree |
| e <i>creo que</i> | 5 I would like |
| f <i>quiero</i> | 6 I think that |

CULTURE EXPLANATION: Spanish slang

Spanish slang changes a lot from place to place and is notoriously difficult to translate, but here are some of my favourites with approximations!

Hombre – similar to ‘man’ or ‘dude’ in English when used for emphasis, but used by both men and women.

Ojo – ‘careful!’ used in everyday situations. If you’re about to fall down a manhole, someone will yell ¡Ojo!

Es que – ‘it’s just that ...’ a great phrase for adding emphasis to whatever you’re going to say.

¡Que no! – you can think of this roughly as ‘no way!’

Venga – a very energetic expression that can be used to say ‘hurry up’ or to express encouragement, as in ‘come on’.

Vale – just like we use ‘OK’ in English.

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: comparisons

Spanish makes it very easy to compare things. You can describe something as 'more' or 'less', 'bigger' or 'smaller', plus a range of other comparisons using *más* and *menos*:

••• **más** + adjective for 'more/-er' → *más grande* = 'bigger'

••• **menos** + adjective for 'less/-er' → *menos guapo* = 'less handsome'

••• **el más** (or *la/los/las más*) + adjective for 'the most/-est'

→ *el más grande* 'the biggest'

••• **el menos** (or *la/los/las menos*) + adjective for the 'least/-est'

→ *el menos guapo* 'the least handsome'.

<i>más/menos</i>	Example	<i>el más/el menos</i>	Example
más + grande (bigger)	Tu casa es más grande . (Your house is bigger.)	el más + grande (biggest)	Tu casa es la más grande de la ciudad. (Your house is the biggest in the city.)
más + interesante (more interesting)	Creo que esta playa es más bonita . (I think that this beach is more beautiful.)	el más + interesante (most interesting)	Esta playa es la más bonita que conozco. (This beach is the most beautiful one that I know.)
menos + joven (less young)	Es menos inteligente que su hermano. (She is less intelligent than her brother.)	el menos + cansado (least tired)	Eres la menos cansada aquí . (You are the least tired girl here.)

To compare amounts, you can also use *más* and *menos*.

Example: *Hoy veo menos turistas.*

There's one major exception within comparisons: when you want to talk about 'better' and 'best' or 'worse' and 'worst':

Adjective	-er form	-est form
bueno (good)	mejor (better)	el/la mejor (best)
malo (bad)	peor (worse)	el/la peor (worst)

Example: ¡Creo que este restaurante tiene *la mejor* tortilla del mundo!
(I think that this restaurant has the **best** Spanish omelette in the world!)

1 Practise using the different forms of *más*, *menos*, *mejor* or *peor*, using the phrases given.

Example: Este mes tiene menos días. (This month has fewer days.)

- a Los estudiantes en esta universidad son _____.
(The students in this university are nicer.)
- b Este biblioteca tiene _____. (This library has more books.)
- c El cantante es _____. (The singer is more famous.)
- d El rubio es _____. (The blonde (guy) is younger.)
- e La comida es _____. (The food is less expensive.)
- f Hay _____ en este restaurante que en el otro.
(There are fewer tourists in this restaurant than the other.)

PRACTICE

1 Practise using *hay*. Combine this phrase with the sentence endings given to form new sentences in Spanish.

Example: There are not ... (enough days in the weekend).

❖ ¡No hay suficientes días en un fin de semana!

- a Are there ... (only three students here)?

- b There are some ... (books at my house).

- c I think that there are ... (fewer dogs in the park today).

2 How would you translate the following into Spanish?

a Barcelona is bigger than La Rioja.

b There are fewer people (*gente*) here than at your house (*en tu casa*).

c I think that this restaurant is too small.

d During the week, you have to work/it's necessary to work.

PUT IT TOGETHER

¿*Qué lugar del mundo quieres visitar?* Recommend to a friend some things they can do in a city you know or would like to visit. Use the vocab you learned in Conversation 2, as well as any new 'me-specific' vocab that you look up. Try to include:

- places you would like to visit (*me gustaría*)
- sites or experiences you think would be the best (*mejor*)
- what for you is a 'must see' (*hay que ver*)
- phrases for comparison (*más, menos*)
- phrases for expressing your opinion (*en mi opinión*).

Hay tantos lugares en _____ (ciudad) que me gustaría visitar ...

CONVERSATION 3

What do you recommend?

Another important dinner topic in Spain is culture. You don't need to quote Bécquer, but it's good to learn some phrases to contribute to conversations and give *tu opinión* about books, music, art, news or politics!

Now that their debate is settled, Sarah and Julia share their opinions on music and books and give each other suggestions.

🔊 06.05 What phrase does Sarah use to say 'tell me'?

Sarah: Dime una cosa, Julia. Busco inspiración para mi arte. Creo que necesito entender la cultura española. **¿Qué me recomiendas?**

Julia: ¡Buena pregunta! Me parece que tienes que aprender más sobre la música en español. **En mi opinión**, la mejor música en español es la de Joaquín Sabina. Me gusta más que la música moderna. ¡Sus palabras son inspiradoras! Voy a darte unas canciones.

Sarah: ¡Gracias! Yo acabo de leer un libro sobre cómo la política afecta a la música.

Julia: ¡Qué bien! Me interesa mucho la política y ese libro **me parece** interesante. Pero, francamente, ¡no me gustan los políticos!

Sarah: A mí, tampoco. Creo que hablan mucho pero dicen muy pocas cosas.

Julia: ¡No puedo estar más de acuerdo! Por cierto, **¿puedes recomendarme** algún libro sobre política en inglés? Tengo que practicar mi inglés.

Sarah: ¡Por supuesto! Mañana te doy el libro que acabo de leer. Te va a encantar.

Julia: ¡Gracias!

Sarah: **¡Gracias a ti!** ←

Julia: ¿Dónde está el camarero? Voy a pedir la cuenta. Señor, ¡la cuenta, por favor!

Sarah: **¡Te invito yo!** ←

Literally 'thanks to you', *gracias a ti* is like saying 'no, thank you!' as a polite reply to *gracias*.

VOCAB: *te invito yo*

I love that 'I invite you' is how you say 'it's my treat' in Spanish. And notice the use of **yo** here for emphasis – just in case Julia is ready to protest, Sarah makes it clear it's definitely her paying.

CULTURE TIP:

gratuity (propina)

Tipping in Spain is nice, but optional. If you enjoy a meal, feel free to tip something between five and ten per cent of the total price. A lot of people just tend to round up to the next euro.

FIGURE IT OUT

1 Answer the questions with a short phrase in Spanish.

- a What does Julia think is the best music in Spanish? _____
- b What music does she not like as much? _____
- c What is Sarah going to give Julia? _____

2 Deduce the meaning of these phrases.

- a *unas canciones* _____
- b *una buena pregunta* _____
- c *Te va a encantar* _____

3 How do you ask the following in Spanish?

- a What do you recommend? _____
- b Where is the waiter? _____
- c The bill, please! _____

4 Highlight the phrases in the conversation.

- a in my opinion
- b I like that more than ...
- c What do you recommend?
- d I would like
- e I'm going to give you
- f you can recommend

NOTICE

🔊 06.06 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 3

Spanish	Meaning
dime una cosa ...	tell me something (a thing) ...
busco inspiración	I'm looking for inspiration
¡buena pregunta!	good question!
me parece que ...	it seems to me that ...
tienes que aprender más sobre ...	you have to learn more about ...

en mi opinión ...	in my opinion ...
la mejor música es la de ...	the best music is from ...
me gusta más que ...	I like it more than ...
voy a darte	I'll give you
acabo de leer un libro sobre ...	I just read a book about ...
me interesa mucho	I'm very interested (to-me it-interests a-lot)
francamente	honestly / frankly
a mí, tampoco	me neither
hablan mucho	they talk a lot
pero dicen muy pocas cosas	but they say very few things
¡no puedo estar más de acuerdo!	I couldn't agree more!
¿puedes recomendarme ...?	can you recommend to me ...?
te va a encantar	you will love it
voy a pedir ...	I'm going to ask for ...
la cuenta	the bill

VOCAB: acabo de ...
(I just recently ...)
 In English, to say you've recently finished doing something, you'll use the word 'just': I've just eaten lunch, I've just studied, I've just read a book.
 In Spanish, you'll put the phrase **acabo de** in front of a dictionary form verb to say you've just done it: **acabo de comer, acabo de estudiar, acabo de leer un libro.**

1 How do you say these phrases in Spanish?

- a you're going to love it _____
- b I like it more than ... _____
- c Do you want to ask for it? _____
- d I just spoke ... _____

2 Match the correct Spanish phrases with the English translations.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| a <i>te doy</i> | 1 I'm sure that |
| b <i>estoy seguro de que</i> | 2 I'd like to learn |
| c <i>me gusta más</i> | 3 I'm going to ask |
| d <i>me gustaría aprender</i> | 4 I give you |
| e <i>voy a pedir</i> | 5 I like it more |

3 Notice which phrases can be used to ask for recommendations. Write them out here in Spanish.

- a What do you recommend (to me)? _____
- b Can you recommend to me ... ? _____
- c Tell me ... _____

PRACTICE

1 Practise adapting power phrases to use in a variety of different situations.

- a Power phrase: *Voy a pedir ...* (I'm going to ask for ...)

... water _____

... the bill _____

... more time _____

... another drink _____

- b Power phrase: *Me gustaría aprender más sobre ...* (algo)

What new places or topics would you like to learn more about? Use this power phrase to write three sentences about them.

2 Fill in the blanks with the missing words in Spanish.

- a *¡ _____ la _____ gótica! _____, me gusta _____ la _____ moderna.*
(**I love** (the) gothic **architecture**. **In fact**, I like it **more than** (the) modern **architecture**.)

- b _____, *¿qué libro _____ interesante?*
(**In your opinion**, which book **is more** interesting?)

- c *Un momento, ¡ _____ dirección!*
(Hold on a minute, **I should give you my** address!)

- d *¿Cuál te gusta _____: la _____ clásica _____ música hip-hop?*
(Which do you like **more**, classical **music or** hip-hop music?)



#LANGUAGEHACK: sound more fluent with conversation connectors

As a beginner, when you're asked a question in Spanish, you may be tempted to give single word answers. Do you like this book? *Sí*. How is your food? *Bien*.

Though you are limited as a beginner in not being able to give more detailed replies yet, you can train yourself to give longer replies in Spanish by learning versatile phrases to use between any *sí*, *no* or other brief answers.

Conversation connectors are power phrases that you can tack on to nearly anything you say to make your conversations flow better and feel less one-sided. For example, in Conversation 3, Sarah uses the conversation connectors, *es una buena pregunta* and *en mi opinión* during her discussion with Julia.

How to use conversation connectors

Good conversation connectors should be versatile. They don't add extra information to the sentence, but expand on what could otherwise be a very short answer.

For example, if someone asks you: *¿Tienes hambre?* You could reply with:

Gracias por la pregunta; sí, tengo hambre, ¡y tú!

06.07 Listen to the audio, and repeat each connector phrase to mimic the speaker.

for adding your opinion

en mi opinión (in my opinion)
si entiendo bien (if I understand correctly)
por desgracia (unfortunately)
me parece que (it seems to me that)
la verdad es que (the truth is)
en general (in general)
pero en la práctica (but in practice)

for concluding an idea

por lo menos (at least)
por fin (finally)
lo que pasa es (what happened is)
aunque (although)
de ninguna manera (no way)
menos mal que (it's a good thing that)
a ver (let's see)
no tengo ni idea (I have no idea)

for elaborating on an idea

es decir (that is to say)
o sea ... (so ...)
por ejemplo (for example)
y por eso ... (and that is why ...)

for changing the subject

por otra parte (on the other hand)
por cierto (by the way)
además (besides, in addition to)

Here are a few more examples of how to use conversation connectors:

... If someone asks, *¿Cuántos años tienes?* you could say, *Tengo 41 años*, or ...

Pues ... entre nosotros ... por desgracia, ¡Ya tengo 41 años!


... If someone asks, *¿Por qué aprendes español?* you could say, *Porque me encanta la cultura española*, or ...

La verdad es que ... ¡me encanta la cultura española! ¡Y por eso aprendo español!


As you can see, conversation connectors help you expand on your answers, and give them a much chattier feel!

This technique will help you develop a conversational flow even if you have too few words to keep your side of the conversation very interesting for now. For beginners, momentum helps conversations stay alive better than more words.

YOUR TURN: use the hack

- 1  **06.08** Practise getting more familiar with the sound and pronunciation of conversation connectors. Listen to the audio, and repeat each connector phrase to mimic the speaker.

<i>por desgracia</i>	<i>me parece que</i>	<i>no tengo ni idea</i>
<i>a ver</i>	<i>aunque</i>	<i>por cierto</i> <i>y por eso</i>

- 2  **06.09** Now practise recognizing the spoken phrases. Listen to the audio, and write down the connector phrase you hear in Spanish.

a _____	d _____
b _____	e _____
c _____	f _____

- 3 Practise using the conversation connectors suggested to give more lengthy replies to common questions.

Example: *¿Piensas que esta casa es demasiado pequeña?*

... *La verdad es que, pienso que, francamente, ¡esta casa no es demasiado pequeña!*

- a *¿Te gusta la cena?* _____
- b *¿Dónde vives?* _____
- c *¿Quieres algo del supermercado?* _____
- d *¿Tomas café?* _____

PUT IT TOGETHER

Imagine you have a friend who wants to have a culture-filled weekend, and asks you to recommend some worthwhile cultural endeavours. Prepare phrases you could use during Spanish dinner conversations, with culture as a central topic. Create 'me-specific' sentences in which you:


- describe music, art or books that you love
- use phrases for offering your opinion
(*en mi opinión, creo que, me gusta*)
- include power phrases (*me gustaría aprender más sobre ...*)
- use conversation connectors (*francamente, entre nosotros ...*)
- use comparisons (*más, menos, mejor*).

A light blue rectangular area with a torn bottom edge, containing ten horizontal lines for writing. Each line starts with a small white circle on the left side.

COMPLETING UNIT 6

Check your understanding

Listen to the audio, which will play sets of two statements in Spanish. The first statement gives information about someone. The second statement attempts to summarize that information.

 **06.10** Based on what you understand, circle *verdadero* if the summary is correct or *falso* if it's false.

Example: *María cree que esta ciudad es bonita.*

Summary: *Le gusta la ciudad.* → verdadero / falso

a verdadero / falso

c verdadero / falso

e verdadero / falso

b verdadero / falso

d verdadero / falso

Show what you know ...

Here's what you've just learned. Write or say an example for each item in the list. Then check off the ones you know.

- Ask for a specific food item using 'I'll have'.
- Ask for a specific drink using 'I would like'.
- Use phrases in formal situations:
 - good evening
 - please (formal)
 - thanks to you (formal)
- Talk about unspecified amounts and plurals:
 - some songs
 - too many tourists
 - so many churches
- Say 'I agree', 'I disagree' and 'in my opinion'.
- Give one phrase each for giving and asking for recommendations.
- Give the comparison words 'more than', 'less than', 'most' and 'better than'.
- Give two examples of conversation connectors.

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION



It's time to complete your mission: convince your friend to try out your favourite restaurant. To do this, you'll need to prepare phrases for giving your opinions and explaining why you agree or disagree. Either describe a restaurant you know and love, or research some restaurants in a Spanish-speaking country you want to visit.

Please visit www.italki.com/languagehacking

STEP 1: build your script

Keep building your script! Use the opinion phrases to:

- describe your favourite restaurant. Say what type of food and drinks they serve. Why do you like it so much? Which are your favourites and why?
- convince a friend to try it out by saying what makes it better than other restaurants in town (use comparisons!)
- give or ask for recommendations
- include power phrases and conversation connectors.

Write down your script, then repeat it until you feel confident.

STEP 2: it's all about me! ... online

Yes, it is! Personalize your language to talk about yourself and what's important to you! Learning a language is easier when you can talk about things that are meaningful. When you feel good about your script, go online to find your next mission and share your recording with the community.

Read restaurant reviews in Spanish online to help you form your argument. You can see how Spanish speakers in real life describe their favourite (or least favourite) restaurant experiences by reading their own words ... online! Get more details on adding this step to your mission online to the #LanguageHacking community.

STEP 3: learn from other learners

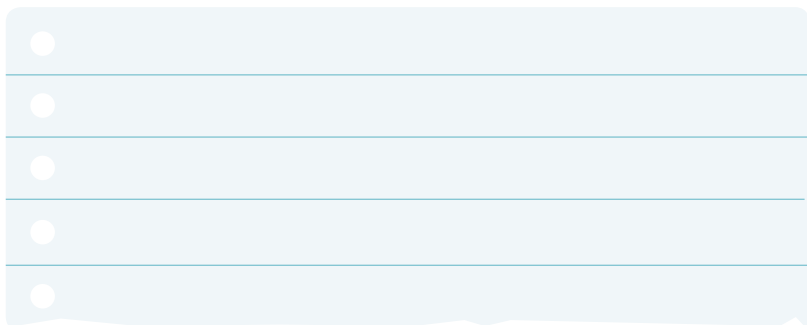
Test out your debate skills with other language hackers! Your task is to reply in Spanish to at least three different people to tell them whether you agree or disagree with the argument they made and why.

This time, as you're speaking, use conversation connectors between phrases and while you're thinking, to help your Spanish flow better. By using these phrases right away, you'll also start burning them into your muscle memory, so they are at the tip of your tongue when you need them!



STEP 4: reflect on what you've learned

What did you find easy or difficult about this unit? Did you learn any new words in the community space? After every script you write or conversation you have, you'll gain insight for what gaps you need to fill in your script.



HEY, LANGUAGE HACKER, LOOK AT YOU GO!

Now you can share opinions, talk about food, make comparisons, and keep the conversation flowing – you've come a long way. Cherish this feeling and know that things can only go up from here!

Next, let's make a huge leap forward with the range of conversations you can have – by starting to talk about the past.

¡Puedes hacerlo!

7 TALKING ABOUT YESTERDAY ... LAST WEEK ... A LONG TIME AGO



Your mission

Imagine this – you’ve just joined a Spanish meet-up group and you have to introduce yourself by sharing personal stories, but with a twist – it can be true or completely made up.

Your mission is to tell a true, but possibly unbelievable story or one completely made-up story in as convincing a way as possible so that the others can’t guess whether it’s true or false. Be prepared to **describe a personal story** or a **life lesson you’ve learned from your past experiences**, whether in learning a new language, moving to a new place, or taking a big risk.

This mission will help you expand the range of conversation topics you can confidently contribute to in casual situations and allow you to start using anecdotes to spice up your Spanish repertoire!

Mission prep

- Talk about the past in just two steps: 1. *he* 2. *hablado*
- Recognize other past forms and express yourself in the past: *¿Qué hiciste?/¿Has visto?*
- Say how long ago something happened using *hace*
- Use the past tense to talk about your progress in Spanish: *¿He dicho ... bien?*

BUILDING LANGUAGE FOR RICHER CONVERSATIONS

Until now, your conversations in Spanish have focused on what’s happening now or in the future. Let’s expand on that to help you give detailed descriptions of things you did in the past as well.

The details of your life will help you have much richer conversations. You’ll also learn shortcuts for learning irregular verb forms, and for getting by in conversations even when you haven’t learned all the verb forms yet.



#LANGUAGEHACK

time travel – three ways to talk about the past using the present

CONVERSATION 1

What did you do last weekend?

As you speak Spanish with the same people more regularly, a big question is often 'What am I going to talk about?' Being able to use and understand the past tense is a great solution to this problem. You can use it to tell stories about your life, which makes for endless conversation topics.

🔊 **07.01** Sarah is talking again with Antonio, one of her online teachers. She's describing what she did over the weekend with Julia. How does Antonio ask, 'What did you do last weekend?'

Antonio: ¡Hola, Sarah! ¿Qué hay de nuevo? ¿Qué has hecho este fin de semana?

Sarah: Julia y yo cenamos en un bar de tapas y hablamos de nuestros planes para el fin de semana. Entonces, ayer visitamos la playa y un montón de lugares de Barcelona.

Antonio: ¿Y qué tal?

Sarah: ¡Me divertí! De hecho, descubrí que Julia ama el arte, ¡como yo! Sabe mucho sobre los diferentes tipos de arte que existen.

Antonio: ¡Qué casualidad! Por cierto, conoces a Julia desde la semana pasada, ¿verdad?

Sarah: Así es. ¡Es muy lista! ¡Me cae bien!

More often than not, you speak 'of' things (using *de*) in Spanish, rather than 'about' them.

FIGURE IT OUT

1 What is Sarah's opinion of Barcelona?

- a** It's fun. **b** It's not bad. **c** It's one of her favourite places.

2 Write out these phrases in Spanish.

- a** this weekend _____ **c** What's new? _____
b we talked about our plans _____

3 What do you think the word *descubrí* means? _____

4 ¿Verdadero o falso? Select the correct answer.

- a Julia read about a restaurant she'd like to go to. verdadero / falso
- b Antonio spoke with Julia. verdadero / falso
- c Yesterday, Sarah went to the beach. verdadero / falso
- d Sarah met Julia one week ago. verdadero / falso

NOTICE

🔊 07.02 Listen to the audio and study the table. Repeat to mimic the speakers.

Essential phrases for Conversation 1

Spanish	Meaning
¿qué hay de nuevo?	what's new?
¿qué has hecho este fin de semana?	what did you do this weekend?
cenamos en un bar de tapas	we ate dinner at a tapas bar
hablamos de nuestros planes	we talked about our plans
entonces, ayer ...	then, yesterday ...
visitamos la playa	we visited the beach
y un montón de lugares	and a bunch of places
¿y qué tal?	and how was it?
¡me divertí!	I had fun!
descubrí que ...	I discovered that ...
... Julia ama el arte	... Julia loves art
la semana pasada	last week
así es	that's right
¡es muy lista!	she is very clever!
¡me cae bien!	I like her!

In English we say 'there's a bunch of stuff' or 'there's a ton of stuff' - in Spanish, they use the word *montón* exactly the same way. Remember it by thinking that there's a 'mountain' of stuff.

Me cae bien is an expression that means 'I like this person', whereas *me gusta* has a romantic connotation when applied to a person. *Me cae bien* literally means 'he/she falls-on me'.

1 Write the Spanish translations for these words.

- a last week _____
- b last (previous) _____
- c yesterday _____

2 Find the following Spanish phrases in the phrase list. Then fill in the blanks for each one.

- a What did you do? ¿Qué _____
- b I had fun _____ d we have talked _____
- c we have visited _____ e we had dinner _____

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: forming the past in two easy steps

Just like in English, Spanish has several ways to talk about the past. We have 'I learned', 'I have learned', 'I was learning' and 'I had learned'.

But distinguishing each of these from one another is a low priority for beginner learners. As long as you use some kind of past form, Spanish speakers will understand you. So let's focus on the easiest one: **'I have learned'**.

It's formed in just two steps:

Step 1: start with the appropriate form of the verb *haber*. This is a special verb that means 'to have' when talking about the past (not to be confused with *tener* – 'to have', as in 'to possess').

<i>he</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>ha</i>	<i>hemos</i>	<i>han</i>
I have	you have	he/she has	we have	they have

GRAMMAR: past-tense exceptions to know

There aren't so many, but a few verbs don't follow this *-ado* or *-ido* pattern. Here are some of the most important worth knowing:

ver → *visto* (seen)

hacer → *hecho* (done/made)

decir → *dicho* (said/told)

escribir → *escrito* (written)

Step 2: add the verb you want to use in the past tense, and modify it slightly to become the past form, which is usually very predictable. For most verbs, just replace the last two letters of the dictionary form as follows:

Dictionary-form ending	Past-form ending	Example
-ar verbs	-ado	<i>he bailado</i> (I've danced)
-er and -ir verbs	-ido	<i>he comido</i> (I've eaten)

Example: to form the past, 'I have learned', you need:

he + *aprendido* (I have + learned)

- 3 It's really very simple once you start using it on your own. Try it yourself now, by combining those two steps to form 'I have taken':
-

Here are some examples of things you can say now using this form:

- ❖ *Nunca he ido a Perú.* (I've never gone to Peru.) (*ir* = to go, *ido* = gone)
- ❖ *He visto muchas películas.* (I've seen many films.)
- ❖ *¿Has hecho la comida ya?* (Have you made the food already?)
- ❖ *Juan ya me ha dicho eso.* (Juan has already told me that.)
- ❖ *Hemos hablado todo el día.* (We've spoken all day.)

PRACTICE

- 1 Fill in the gaps using *haber* + the past form of the given verb.

- a _____ _____ patatas bravas. (I've eaten ...)
- b _____ _____ español hoy. (I've studied ...)
- c _____ _____ al fútbol en el parque. (I've played ...)
- d _____ _____ dos años en Málaga. (I've lived ...)

- 2 Antonio also talked a little about his past during the call. Fill in the gaps using the past tense form you've learned.

- a _____ _____ a Canadá tres veces en un año.
(I have travelled ...)
- b _____ _____ aquí durante mucho tiempo.
(They have worked ...)
- c *¿Por qué nunca _____ _____ esa película? ¡Es fantástica!*
(Why have you never seen ...?)
- d _____ _____ en ese restaurante antes.
(We have eaten ...)
- e *Esta mañana, Rosa _____ _____ sangría.*
(This morning, Rosa has drunk ...)

VOCAB: *hecho* as 'fact' and 'made'

Do you recognize *hecho*? You saw it appear in the phrase *de hecho* which means 'in fact'. *Hecho*, as a noun, means 'fact', whereas when it's used as the past form of the verb *hacer*, it means 'made/done'.

PUT IT TOGETHER

Let's use the past tense forms you've learned to create 'me-specific' sentences you could use in real conversations. Make the sentences as relevant to you as possible.

1 First, answer the question in Spanish with real details about your life.

You might include:

- where you went (*he ido*)
- who you talked to
- what you did there.

¿Qué hay de nuevo? ¿Qué has hecho esta semana?

2 Next, imagine you're having a conversation with someone and need to describe someone you've always known, or something you've never done. Create sentences using 'always' and 'never', and try to use verbs you haven't used before to describe:

- where you've never been (*nunca he ido a ...*)
- who you've always talked to (*siempre he hablado con ...*)
- what he/she has always said ... (*siempre ha dicho ...*)
- what you've never done together (*nunca hemos comido ...*).

CONVERSATION 2

A few months ago

Another great way to expand the scope of your Spanish conversations is to learn to talk about your Spanish progress, in Spanish! People will definitely ask you these questions, so let's prepare you to answer them in Spanish.

Now that Sarah and Antonio have caught up, they start discussing what Sarah has been doing to improve her Spanish.

🔊 07.03 How does Antonio ask 'Have you had time to ... ?'

Antonio: A ver, Sarah, ¿cómo van tus clases? ¿Has tenido tiempo de estudiar español esta semana?

Sarah: Sí, he estudiado un poco. He aprendido unas palabras nuevas y he practicado unas frases con Julia.

Antonio: ¡Excelente! ¿Has hecho tus deberes?

Sarah: Sí, aquí están.

Antonio: ¿Tienes alguna duda?

Sarah: ¡Sí! ¿Cuál es la diferencia entre 'apartamento' y 'piso'? ¿He dicho 'apartamento' bien?

Antonio: ¡No hay ninguna diferencia! Y sí, lo has dicho bien. Por cierto, tengo que decir que eres una estudiante excelente. ¿Cuándo comenzaste a aprender español?

Sarah: He comenzado ... **hace** solo unos meses. El verano pasado decidí viajar **durante** un año, ¡así que compré un billete de avión y volé a Madrid!

Antonio: ¡Es cierto, me olvidé!

VOCAB: using **hace**

The phrase **hace** (usually 'it makes/does') can mean 'ago' depending on context. When used as 'ago', the order is different from English, since it comes before the time – not after. **Hace tres días** = 'three days ago'.

GRAMMAR TIP:

'for' in the past
We've seen that you can say *por* whenever you are making plans to say if you will visit somewhere *por una semana*, but for describing periods in the past, it's better to use *durante*, 'during'.



FIGURE IT OUT

1 *¿Verdadero o falso?* Select the correct answer.

- a Sarah studied Spanish over the weekend. *verdadero / falso*
- b Sarah practised some phrases alone. *verdadero / falso*
- c Sarah started learning Spanish one year ago. *verdadero / falso*

2 Answer these questions about the conversation.

a What did Sarah do with Julia to help her Spanish this week?

b When (how long ago) did Sarah start learning Spanish?

c What is the meaning of the phrase *¡Me olvidé!*

3 There are 13 incidents of a past tense in the conversation – find them all and circle them.

4 There is one use of 'I have' without an associated past form attached. Which is it? (Hint: look carefully at different word orders).

5 Give a likely translation of the following phrases:

a *¿Has tenido tiempo?*

b *He aprendido unas palabras nuevas.*

c *He comenzado ... hace solo unos meses.*

NOTICE

🔊 07.04 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 2

Spanish	Meaning
¿has tenido tiempo ...?	have you had time ...?
he estudiado ...	I have studied ...
he aprendido ...	I have learned ...
unas palabras nuevas	some new words
he practicado ...	I have practised ...
unas frases	some phrases
¿has hecho ...	have you done ...
tus deberes?	your homework?
sí, aquí están	yes, here it is
¿tienes alguna duda?	do you have any questions?
¿cuál es la diferencia entre ...?	what is the difference between ...
¿he dicho ... bien?	did I say ... right?
por cierto, tengo que decir que	by the way, I have to say that
¿cuándo comenzaste ...	when did you start ...
he comenzado ...	I started ...
decidí ...	I decided ...
compré ...	I bought ...
un billete de avión	a plane ticket
volé a Madrid	I flew to Madrid
¡es cierto, me olvidé!	that's right, I forgot!

1 Write out the sentences in Spanish.

- Have you had time to ...? _____
- I have to say that ... _____
- Have you had ...? _____

VOCAB: tus deberes

In Unit 2 you saw that **deber** means 'should'. **Deberes** literally means 'duties/obligations'. This means that the Spanish word for 'homework' is plural. When you refer to it, you'll use **los** (they) rather than **el** (it). You never have a little homework, you always have a lot!

GRAMMAR TIP: 'I studied', 'I flew' – the simple past

Some of these past forms don't correspond to what you learned in Conversation 1 because they use the non-'have' version of the past. e.g. **comí** (I ate) vs. **he comido** (I've eaten). In the simple past, you'll notice that:

➤ The **yo** form usually ends in **-é** for **-ar** verbs and **-í** for **-er/-ir** verbs.

➤ The **tú** form ends in **-aste** for **-ar** verbs, and **-iste** for **-er/-ir** verbs

➤ The **nosotros** form is the same for **-ar** verbs (**-amos**) and **-ir** verbs (**-imos**), and slightly different for **-er** verbs (**-imos** in the past, **-emos** in the present).

We'll rarely use this form in this course, since you can get your point across fine using the 'have' version in many situations. Rather than learn these completely, try to focus on just recognizing them for now.

2 Recognize the past tense phrases in Spanish. Write out the correct phrase from the word box next to its English counterpart.

comenzaste me olvidé decidí

- a** I decided _____ **c** I forgot! _____
b you started _____

3 Find the following past tense phrases in the phrase list, then fill in their Spanish translations.

- a** I studied _____ **e** I decided to _____
b I learned _____ **f** I bought _____
c I practised _____ **g** I flew to _____
d I started _____ **h** I forgot _____

4 Fill in the blanks with the English translation of the Spanish.

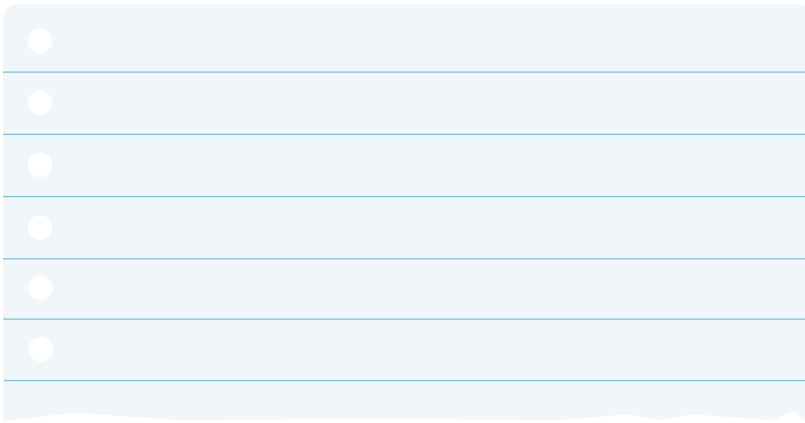
- a** *Una vez, volé a Canadá.* (One time, _____ to Canada.)
b *El verano pasado tomé un tren a Italia.* (Last summer, _____ a train to Italy.)
c *He decidido quedarme aquí.* (_____ to stay here.)
d *¿María ha visitado México?* (_____ María _____ Mexico?)

PUT IT TOGETHER

1 Practise talking about your Spanish progress, in Spanish! Use the phrases you've learned from this conversation to describe how things were when you first started learning the language, and how they're different now. What have you learned or practised recently? How have you managed your time? Do you have any questions about the language?

Write it all out now in Spanish! You might include:

- He comenzado ...
- He practicado / He dicho ...
- Esta semana he aprendido ...
- He tenido tiempo para ...



CONVERSATION 3

I learned Spanish in school

Sarah and Antonio continue discussing Sarah's progress in Spanish. Pay attention to which words and phrases you recognize.

🔊 07.05 What phrase does Sarah use to say 'We never spoke ...'?

Sometimes the easiest thing is to express what you want to say - even in an incomplete sentence. Sarah does that here when she doesn't want to think about which form of 'to be' is right in this situation.

Sarah: ¿Sabes que aprendí español en la escuela durante un año?

Antonio: ¿En serio?

Sarah: Lo olvidé todo.

Antonio: ¡Qué fuerte! ¿Por qué?

Sarah: Ese año solo aprendimos gramática. No hablamos nunca en español. Tú dices que es mejor hablar cada día.

Antonio: ¡Claro! ¡Así se aprende más rápido!

Sarah: Ya, pero mi pronunciación entonces ... uf, ¡malísima!

Antonio: Ahora no tienes un acento fuerte. ¡Hablas bien! ¡Y puedes decir muchas cosas!

Sarah: ¡Gracias, muy amable por tu parte!



FIGURE IT OUT

1 Highlight the cognates (and near cognates) in the conversation.

- a pronunciation b accent c grammar

2 ¿Verdadero o falso? Select the correct answer.

- a Sarah studied Spanish in school for one year. verdadero / falso
 b They spoke Spanish often in her class. verdadero / falso
 c Sarah's tutor said her pronunciation was very bad. verdadero / falso

NOTICE

🔊 07.06 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 3

Spanish	Meaning
aprendí español en la escuela durante un año	I learned Spanish for a year in school
¿en serio?	really?
lo olvidé todo	I forgot everything
ese año	that year
solo aprendimos gramática	we only learned grammar
no hablamos nunca	we never spoke
me has dicho que ...	you told me that ...
es mejor hablar cada día	it's better to speak every day
mi pronunciación entonces ... ¡malísima!	my pronunciation then ... terrible!
no tienes un acento fuerte	you don't have a strong accent
¡muy amable por tu parte!	that's nice of you!

When adding *muy* (very) or even *tan* (so, as in 'it was so good!') isn't enough, you can modify adjectives even more by replacing the *o* with *-ísimo* or the *a* with *-ísima*. So *buenísimo* is like saying it was incredibly good.

1 How would you write the following in Spanish?

- a it's better to learn every day _____
 b I forgot your name _____
 c I learned Spanish that year _____

GRAMMAR TIP:*double negatives*

Spanish is a language that loves its double negatives! Whenever you say *nada* (nothing), *nadie* (nobody) or *nunca* (never), usually you'll go further and make the sentence negative: *no entiendo nada* (I don't understand anything/I understand nothing), *no conozco a nadie* (I don't know anybody/I know nobody), *no voy nunca* (I don't ever go/I never go).

2 Match the Spanish phrases with the correct English translations.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| a <i>aprendimos</i> | 1 I learn |
| b <i>aprendemos</i> | 2 I learned |
| c <i>aprendo</i> | 3 I've learned |
| d <i>hemos aprendido</i> | 4 we learn |
| e <i>aprendí</i> | 5 we learned |
| f <i>he aprendido</i> | 6 we've learned |

3 Based on how the phrase *No hablamos nunca* is formed, complete the following sentences:

- a** *No hemos* _____ . (We've seen nothing.)
- b** *No hay* _____ . (There's no one here.)
- c** *No he* _____ . (I've never eaten paella.)

VOCAB EXPLANATION: time indicators**Time indicators**

Past	Future	Specific days (past and future)
ayer (yesterday)	mañana (tomorrow)	lunes (Monday)
la semana pasada (last week)	la próxima semana (next week)	martes (Tuesday)
el mes pasado (last month)	el próximo mes (next month)	miércoles (Wednesday)
el año pasado (last year)	el próximo año (next year)	jueves (Thursday)
el miércoles/ verano pasado (last Wednesday/ summer)	el próximo noviembre/ fin de semana (next November/ weekend)	viernes (Friday)
una vez (one time)	un día (one day)	sábado (Saturday)
hace dos semanas (two weeks ago)	en dos semanas (in two weeks)	domingo (Sunday)

- 1 Fill in the gaps using the verb given in brackets in the past or future (*ir a*) tense.
- a El lunes pasado _____ mi libro de español. (estudiar)
 - b El próximo año mi hermano y yo _____ a Argentina. (viajar)
 - c La próxima semana yo _____ un libro en español. (leer)
 - d La semana pasada, el profesor y yo _____ todo el día. (practicar)
 - e Ayer mis amigos _____ toda la tarta. (comer)
 - f Hace una semana mi prima _____ mi ciudad. (visitar)

PRACTICE

1 Complete the dialogue.

- a ¿Puedes decirme la diferencia entre _____ _____?
(Can you tell me the difference between **the two words**?)
- b ¡ _____ muy rápido! ¿Qué _____ eso?
(**You spoke** so fast! What does that **mean**?)
- c ¿ _____ eso? (**Did you understand** (Have you understood) that?)
- d ¿ _____ es mi _____? ¿ _____ esa _____ bien?
(**How** is my **pronunciation**? **Did I say** (Have I said) that **word** right?)
- e Quería decir la _____ . (I meant to say the **other word**.)
- f Hoy _____ un museo y _____ mucho sobre arte.
(Today, **I visited** a museum and **I learned** a lot about art.)
- g _____ mi _____ toda la semana. (**I practised** my **grammar** all week.)
- h _____ las _____. ¿Puedes leerlas y puedes _____ si están bien?
(I **wrote** (have written) the **phrases**. Can you read them and can you **tell me** if they are good?)
- i Me _____ mucho. ¡Gracias! (**You** (have) **helped me** a lot. Thank you!)

2 Practise double negatives. How would you say the following?

- a You never help me! _____
- b He didn't say anything. _____
- c I don't know anyone here. _____



#LANGUAGEHACK: time travel – three ways to talk about the past using the present

Language learning is a process, and as a beginner Spanish learner, it's important to remember that you don't need to learn everything at once! One of the truly fun aspects of languages is how flexible, fluid and creative they can be. Let's explore that now to figure out how many inventive ways you can express yourself in the past, even if you don't think you have the grammar or vocab for it yet.

1 Tell a story

Have you ever told a story that went something like this?

'So, the other day, there I am ... minding my own business, when someone comes up to me, and you'll never guess what happens!'

What's unique about this form of storytelling is that although it's clearly an anecdote about something that happened in the past, the entire sentence is actually told in the present tense. You can do the same thing in Spanish!

To make this narrative style work, you need just two components: 1) to set the context of the situation, and 2) to tell what happened (just as you saw in the story). See how it works:

Example: *Anoche, estoy en la parada del bus con otras personas, cuando alguien me dice que el bus ya no viene ...* (Last night, I'm at the bus stop with other people, when someone tells me that the bus isn't coming anymore ...)

2 Use 'I've'...

You've also seen us using the 'I've' past form throughout this unit. This form isn't always technically correct, because it tends to refer to a recent past that may still be taking place, as in: 'I've been here for several hours.'

Regardless, it's a great option because it's very easy to construct, and it clearly refers to something that has happened in the past, which makes it much easier for other people to understand you! It's not perfect, but you can form it in the spur of the moment, when you need it most, and native speakers will know for sure that you want to express yourself in the past. For instance, if you want to say 'I went to that restaurant', but don't know the form yet, you can get by with 'I've'.

Examples: *He ido a ese restaurante.* (I've gone to that restaurant).
Ha hecho el trabajo. (He did/He has done his work).

3 Use 'we ...'

It turns out that the *nosotros* past form is the same as it is in the present for most verbs.

This means that if you can find a way to pull someone else into your story, then you can use the simple past tense just by telling it from the perspective of *nosotros* (instead of *yo*) – thus using a very easy shortcut!

Example: *Escribimos emails la semana pasada* – we wrote emails last week (if you wanted to say 'he wrote me an email last week' but don't know the form yet).

4 Just say it 'Tarzan' style!

If all else fails, and your mind completely freezes up, the world won't end if all you can think of is a present form of the verb. Though you will want to use this sparingly, people will get the gist of what you're saying even if all you can get out is something like *Ayer ... como pizza*.

HACK IT: say 'we'

Take advantage of the fact that the *nosotros* form is the same in the present and the past, but avoid it with some of the most irregular verbs. One way to be sure is if the *yo* form ends in *-oy* (*voy, estoy, soy*) or if it's a *-go* verb (*tengo, vengo, digo*), like you saw in Unit 5. If not, then you should be safe to use it!

Try focusing on improving just one aspect of your language skills at a time. Start with the most important ones first, then fine-tune from there.

GRAMMAR TIP: irregular verbs


The only thing you'll need to watch out for are the sneaky irregular verbs – such as the ones whose *yo* present forms end in *-oy* (like *voy, soy, estoy, doy*, etc.) or *-go* (like *tengo, vengo, digo*, etc.). For these verbs, the past forms of *nosotros* will be different.

YOUR TURN: use the hack

1 Try your best to describe past actions you did yourself (or with someone else!), using any form that you are confident of.

Example: *Ayer por la tarde, he ido a la cafetería.*

- a *La semana pasada _____ el tren a Toledo.* (tomar)
- b *El lunes pasado _____ con mi hermano.* (viajar)
- c *El otro día _____ una tortilla de patatas.* (preparar)

- 
- 2** How would you attempt to tell this story if you couldn't think of the past forms of the verbs *buscar* and *encontrar*?

Hace tres días _____ las llaves durante dos horas, ¡pero no las _____ !

(Three days ago, I looked for the keys for two hours but I didn't find them!)

- 3** Now use the time travel #languagehack to talk about the past. Create 'me-specific' sentences that describe things you did at different times (even if you aren't so confident about the precise grammar!)

¿Qué hiciste ...? (What did you do ...?)

Example: ... last weekend? El fin de semana pasado ... he llamado a mi familia.

- a** ... a week ago? _____
- b** ... last Saturday? _____
- c** ... two years ago? _____
- d** ... yesterday? _____

PUT IT TOGETHER

- 1** Imagine you recently bumped into a friend you hadn't seen in a while. Since you remembered that your friend speaks Spanish, you used the opportunity to show them what you know while the two of you caught up!

Use what you've learned in this unit to describe what happened during your chat. What were you thinking ... doing ... saying ...? Use your dictionary to look up new words so that your script is as 'me-specific' as possible. Include:

- where/when you saw him/her: *hace una hora he visto a ...*
- what you both talked about: *hablamos de ...*
- what he/she said: *ha dicho ...*


○

○


○

COMPLETING UNIT 7

Check your understanding

- 1  **07.07** Listen to a Spanish speaker, Édgar, describe what he did this morning. (Feel free to take notes or listen to it multiple times).

-
-
-
-

- 2  **07.08** Now listen to the second audio, which will ask you questions about Édgar. Answer them out loud in Spanish.

Show what you know ...

Here's what you've just learned. Write or say an example for each item in the list. Then tick off the ones you know.

- Give phrases using *haber* and the past form:
 - 'I thought' and 'I said'
 - 'I saw' and 'I decided to'
 - 'I was' and 'I learned'.
- Give a sentence using *hace* to say how long ago you did something.
- Give time indicators for:
 - 'one time' and 'yesterday'
 - 'last week' and 'tomorrow'.
- Write two sentences about the progress you've made in Spanish.

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

It's time to complete your mission: put on your poker face and start your story. Try to fool the #languagehacking community as best you can.

Please visit www.italki.com/languagehacking



Use 'me-specific' vocab plus past-tense phrases to describe an important life lesson you've gained from a past experience - perhaps an embarrassing situation when you used the wrong word in Spanish, or a time when you overcame a personal struggle and felt really encouraged.

Research in learning emphasizes the importance of social context in facilitating language learning!

Step 1: build your script

he pensado ... he aprendido ... he hablado ...

Expand on your scripts by talking about the past. Be sure to include:

- time indicators to describe when this happened (*hace ...*)
- several past tense verbs in various forms to describe what you thought, what you wanted, what you learned, and more
- as many details as possible! (use the time travel #languagehack if you get stuck).

Write down your script, then repeat it until you feel confident.

Step 2: don't be a wallflower. Use language in real social contexts ... online

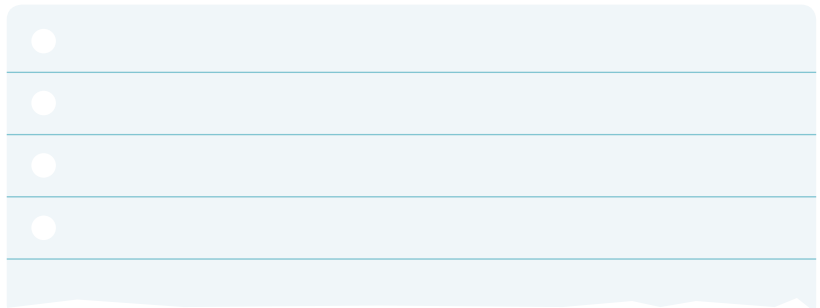
If you're feeling good about your script, it's time to complete your mission! Go online to find your mission for unit 7, and share your recording.

Step 3: learn from other learners

What words of wisdom do the other language hackers have to offer? Which stories are real and which ones are *falso*?

Your task is to watch at least two video clips uploaded by other hackers. Then ask three follow-up questions in Spanish to see if they can keep the conversation going, to help them fill the gaps in their scripts, and to figure out whether what they say is *verdadero* o *falso*. Make your guess.

Step 4: reflect on what you've learned



HEY, LANGUAGE HACKER, SEE HOW THINGS HAVE CHANGED?

You've just learned how to talk about anything in the past. Now you can reminisce on the long-forgotten days when you couldn't speak Spanish. Next, you'll add even more detail to your conversations by describing the specific parts of your daily routine. *¡Ya has aprendido mucho español!*

8

IT'S BEEN A WHILE!



Your mission

Imagine this – one of your Spanish-speaking friends writes a blog about the daily routines of highly productive people – like you! – and you've been asked to contribute an article.

Your mission is to prepare your best productivity advice – in Spanish – for the blog. Be prepared to **describe your daily routine** from your first morning beverage to your bedtime. Talk about **what works well** and **what you'd like to be different**.

This mission will broaden your ability to discuss your daily life and help you become comfortable with small talk in Spanish.

Mission prep

- Talk about your hobbies, routines and daily life
- Use versatile phrases to express your opinions and perceptions – **es importante, me alegro de, veo que**
- Use phrases for catching up with people you know – **cuánto tiempo, me alegro de verte**
- Build on modes of transport – **tomar el metro**
- Talk about what you would potentially do – **podría**.

BUILDING LANGUAGE FOR DESCRIBING DAILY LIFE

As a beginner Spanish learner, it's difficult to be detailed when you speak, so your energy is often best spent learning to express a general idea of what you're trying to say.

But you're quickly becoming an *upper-beginner* Spanish learner! So it's time to learn some tricks for adding more detail to your conversations. You can do this without having to learn a huge amount of new vocab. In this unit, you'll build detail into the conversations you're likely to have, and we'll break a typical conversation into its component parts to develop a more complex strategy for helping each part flow well.



#LANGUAGEHACK

the rephrasing technique for talking your way through complicated sentences

CONVERSATION 1

CULTURE TIP:

besitos

Since Sarah knows Felipe already, when she sees him again they'll greet each other with **besitos** – little pecks/kisses on the cheek. It's a typical greeting between men and women, and between women, in many Spanish-speaking countries.

It's been a while!

When a conversation has passed the point of introduction, where should you go from there? You don't have to think it up on the spot – prepare for these situations by learning strategic phrases you can use to initiate, warm up, and continue any conversation.

Sarah and Felipe are meeting for lunch at a café. Since they already know each other, they can't rely on the usual meet-and-greet expressions.

🔊 **08.01** What phrases do Felipe and Sarah use to 'warm up' the conversation?

While we've used **tomo** as 'I take/I'm taking', Spanish has another verb that matches English more closely, though it's not used as much. You may also hear **estoy comiendo** (I'm eating), or **estás hablando** (you're speaking).

VOCAB: 'Madre mía'

¡Vaya! is how a Spanish speaker would say 'Wow!' Some other handy exclamations include **¡Por Dios!** (My God!), **¡Madre mía!** (literally 'My mother!' – it expresses surprise), **¡Maldita sea!** (literally 'Curse it!' – very mild expression of displeasure), **¡Anda/Venga ya!** ('Get out of here!'/ 'Oh, go on' – expresses disbelief).

Felipe: ¡Hola, Sarah! ¡Me alegro de volver a verte!

Sarah: ¡Sí, cuánto tiempo!

Felipe: Veo que tu nivel de español es mucho mejor. Así que, dime, ¿qué tal todo?

Sarah: Bueno, estoy muy ocupada últimamente. Hace poco he comenzado a cocinar. **¡Estoy tomando** clases!

Felipe: **¡Vaya!** ¿Y qué has aprendido hasta ahora?

Sarah: La última vez aprendimos cómo hacer tortilla de patatas. Cuando intento hacerla en casa, nunca está buena.

Felipe: ¡Ánimo! Yo soy un desastre en la cocina ... Pero practicar es importante.

Sarah: Lo sé, pero aprendo rápido. ¡La próxima vez espero aprender a hacer arroz con leche!

FIGURE IT OUT

1 Use your understanding of the conversation to fill in the rest of the sentence in English. Highlight the corresponding Spanish phrases.

- a Felipe thinks that Sarah's level in Spanish is _____.
- b Sarah started taking a cooking class _____.
- c At her last class, Sarah learned to make _____.

2 How do you say 'I'm happy to see you again!' in Spanish?

3 Answer these questions in Spanish:

a *¿Qué ha comenzado a hacer recientemente Sarah?* _____

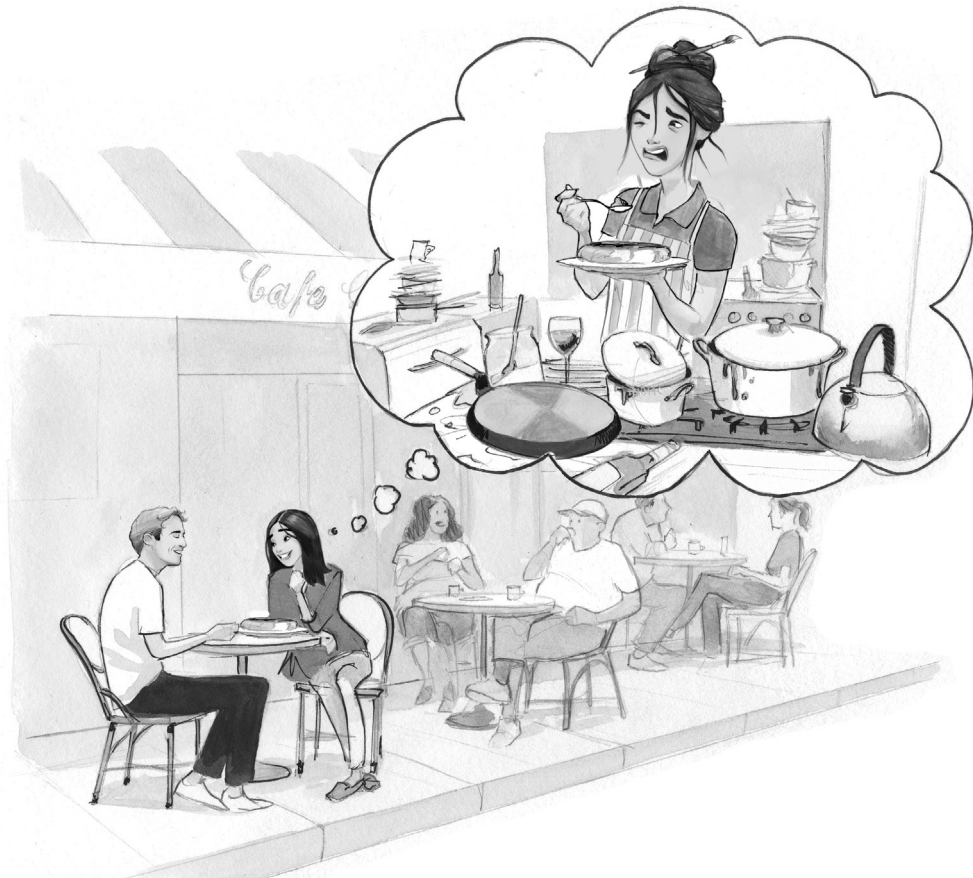
b *¿Qué va a hacer Sarah en la próxima clase de cocina?*

4 Highlight the following phrases in Spanish:

a What's new?

b it's been a while

5 What does *practicar es importante* mean in English?



NOTICE

🔊 08.02 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 1

Volver normally means 'to return' - but in a phrase like this, it has more of a sense of 'do again'.

Pasado refers to the 'most recent' (last) of something, but when you're describing something that's 'final' or that's the 'last' in a limited series - usually a limited amount, such as with vez - then *último* is better.

Spanish	Meaning
¡me alegro de volver a verte!	it's great to see you again!
¡cuánto tiempo!	it's been a while!
veo que ...	I see that ...
¿qué tal todo?	how's everything with you?
estoy muy ocupada últimamente	I am very busy lately
hace poco he comenzado a ...	recently I started ...
cocinar	cooking
¡estoy tomando clases!	I'm taking classes!
hasta ahora	so far (until now)
la última vez	last time
aprendimos como hacer ...	we learned how to make ...
cuando intento ...	when I try ...
¡ánimo!	cheer up!
¡yo soy un desastre en la cocina!	I'm a disaster in the kitchen!
la próxima vez	next time

1 Based on how 'last/next time' are translated, how do you think you would say the following in Spanish?

- a. The last class b. The next person c. The next hour.

2 Fill in the gaps in each expression:

- a ¡ _____ tiempo! (It's been a while!)
- b ¿ _____ has aprendido hasta ahora? (What have you learned so far?)
- c ¡Aprendo _____! (I learn fast!)
- d Espero aprender _____ (I hope to learn to make ...)

CONVERSATION STRATEGY: learn set phrases for each 'stage' of a conversation

A lot of people get nervous about what to say during a conversation. If you're meeting someone for the first time, it's easy – just introduce yourself! But if you've talked with the person before, or you've finished your greetings ... then you'll need to keep the conversation going.

When you understand the structure of a typical conversation you can break it down into component parts and prepare phrases to use at each stage. This way, you're never stuck wondering what to say next.

Warm up the conversation

During the first few seconds, use longer pleasantries to give yourself more time to collect your thoughts and warm up the discussion. For example:

- ❖ *¡Cuánto tiempo!* It's been a while!
- ❖ *¡Me alegro de volver a verte!* I'm happy to see you again!

Get the conversation started

After the initial pleasantries, a conversation topic begins. Prepare some phrases that get the other person talking:

- ❖ *¿Qué tal todo?* How's everything?
- ❖ *Dime, ¿qué te cuentas?* Tell me, what's new for you?
- ❖ *Veo que ... (no has cambiado)* I see that ... (you haven't changed)

Lead the conversation yourself

When it's your turn to talk again, think of phrases you can use to lead the discussion on your own and introduce a new conversation topic:

- ❖ *Bueno, hace poco he comenzado a ...* Well, recently I started to ...
- ❖ *... trabajar como secretaria ...* ... work as a secretary ...
- ❖ *... tomar clases de cocina, etc.* ... go to cooking class, etc.
- ❖ *Últimamente ...* Lately ...

Extend the conversation

As the other person is talking, you could show your interest with filler words like *¡interesante!* or *¿de verdad?* But a slightly more detailed question, prepared in advance, will urge the other person to expand on the topic, and therefore extend the conversation:

- ❖ *Entonces, ¿te gusta?* So, do you like it?
- ❖ *¿Y cómo lo has encontrado?* And how have you found it?

Add detail to your conversations

Remember – you can get more out of a conversation by expanding on a topic with details about when, where, or how something happened. In Conversation 1, Sarah describes her hobby, cooking: *He comenzado a cocinar*.

But she elaborates on this by adding descriptive details (when? what?):

❖ *la última vez* (when) *aprendimos ... tortilla de patatas* (what)

❖ *cuando intento ...* (how) *... en casa* (where)

❖ *hoy* (when) *espero ... arroz con leche* (what)

Review the table, and see how a conversation can flow ...

Language hacker A	Language hacker B
Conversational warmers <i>¡Cuánto tiempo!</i> <i>¡Me alegro de volver a verte!</i>	Conversational warmers <i>¡Muchas gracias por ...!</i>
Conversational starters <i>Dime, ¿qué te cuentas?</i> <i>Veo que ... (no has cambiado / ahora tienes novia ...)</i> <i>Háblame de ti ...</i>	Starting replies <i>No tengo mucho que contar</i> <i>Hago ... lo de siempre</i>
	Conversation leads <i>Bueno, hace poco he comenzado a ...</i> <i>En este momento, yo ...</i> <i>La última vez que hablamos ...</i>
Conversation extensions <i>Entonces ¿te gusta?</i> <i>¿Y cómo lo encontraste?</i>	Conversation details <i>La última vez (when) he aprendido ...</i> <i>cocido madrileño (what)</i> <i>Cuando intento ... (how) ...</i> <i>en casa (where)</i> <i>Hoy (when) espero ... arroz con leche (what)</i>

PRACTICE

1 Look back at the phrase list and highlight ...

- a two conversational warmers
- b two conversational starters
- c one conversation lead

- 2** Now create your own conversation starters using the verbs *saber*, *conocer* or *ver* in their correct forms.
- a** I know that ... _____
 - b** Do you know of ...? _____
 - c** Have you seen ...? _____
- 3** What is your hobby? Pick a hobby that you would likely discuss in a conversation. Use the phrases *hace poco he comenzado a ...* or *en este momento ...* along with 'me-specific' vocab to create two of your own conversation leads.

PUT IT TOGETHER

- 1** Create a script in which you describe your hobby to a friend. Start with a conversational lead, but then add details about the same topic. Try to include ...
- details about why/when you started it (*hace poco, he comenzado, hace*)
 - details of what you do (*la última vez, cuando intento ...*)
 - what you've learned or achieved so far (*hasta ahora*)
 - what you hope to learn or achieve (*espero*)
 - *Es ...* or *estoy ...* (*ejemplo: interesante/contento ...*)

CONVERSATION 2

Your daily routine

What do you normally do in a day? In a week? Sarah and Felipe are talking about the things they do on a regular basis.

As in English, you can shorten some Spanish words down (*bici* 'bike' instead of *bicicleta* and *tele* 'TV' for *televisión*). This also works for words we wouldn't think to shorten in English, like *boli* for *bolígrafo* (pen), *pelí* for *película* (film), *foto* for *fotografía* and many more.

Suelo means 'I usually/I tend to'. I love this verb - it's a handy way to use the dictionary form of the next verb, and can be used for anything you do often! Add this to the list of booster verbs you learned in Unit 4!

🔊 08.03 How does Sarah say 'it was strange at first'?

Felipe: Parece que te va bien en Madrid.

Sarah: Sí, gracias. Al principio era raro, pero ahora tengo una rutina. A menudo, antes de ir al trabajo, suelo pasear por la ciudad.

Felipe: Yo también. Normalmente paseo a mi perro en el parque por la mañana. De vez en cuando voy en **bici** al campo, para tomar el aire.

Sarah: ¡Yo voy en bicicleta a todos lados! No tomo el metro.

Felipe: Yo tampoco, o raramente, porque a veces voy al trabajo en coche. Y por la noche **suelo** cenar en el mismo lugar. Tienen el mejor bocadillo de jamón.

Sarah: Normalmente cocino en casa, pero de vez en cuando vengo aquí, a esta cafetería, para comer.

Felipe: Nunca he estado aquí antes. ¿Te gustaría pedir algo?

FIGURE IT OUT

- Each of these statements are *falso*. Correct each sentence in Spanish to make it *verdadero*.
 - Sarah takes the metro. _____
 - Felipe rarely goes to work by car. _____
 - Sarah eats dinner at a restaurant that has the worst ham sandwich. _____
 - Felipe normally has lunch at a café. _____
- Is everything going well for Sarah in Madrid? Fill in the blanks in English.

At first it was _____, but now _____.

3 Which phrase means 'It seems that ...'? Write it out in Spanish. How is it used in the conversation: as a starter, a warmer or an extension?

4 Find each of the following:

a two sets of opposite phrases:

_____ (me too) _____ (rarely)
 _____ (me neither) _____ (normally)

b two different modes of transport _____

NOTICE

🔊 08.04 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 2

Spanish	Meaning
parece que te va bien	it seems that you're doing well
al principio era raro ... pero ahora ...	at first it was strange ... but now ...
a menudo, antes de ir al trabajo	frequently, before work
suelo pasear por la ciudad	I usually go for a walk around the city
normalmente paseo a mi perro	normally I walk my dog
de vez en cuando	from time to time
para tomar el aire	for some fresh air
voy en bicicleta a todos lados	I ride my bike everywhere
yo tampoco	me neither
raramente	rarely
a veces	sometimes
el mismo restaurante	the same restaurant
vengo aquí, a esta cafetería	I come here, to this café
nunca he estado aquí antes	I've never been here before

The translation used for 'same' works in a similar way to words like *mucho* or *tanto* and changes with gender and number: *los mismos hermanos* (the same brothers), *la misma casa* (the same house).

1 Rephrase the statement *te va bien* into a question form. This could be used as a conversation starter. _____

- 2 Use the conversation to fill in the table with 'detail phrases' you could use to answer the questions: When? How often? Why / How? Where?

Conversation details

When ?	How often?	Where?	Why?/How?
in the morning <u>por la mañana</u>	normally <u>normalmente</u>	around the city <u>j _____</u>	by car <u>n _____</u>
before work <u>a _____</u>	from time to time <u>d _____</u>	in the park <u>por el parque</u>	for lunch <u>o _____</u>
in the evening <u>b _____</u>	rarely <u>e _____</u>	everywhere <u>k _____</u>	
before <u>c _____</u>	often <u>f _____</u>	the same (place) <u>l _____</u>	
	always <u>g _____</u>	at home <u>m _____</u>	
	sometimes <u>h _____</u>		
	never <u>i _____</u>		

- 3 Describe what you typically do at these times in the week, using *suelo* ...

Example: *El miércoles por la noche suelo ... ver mi serie favorita en la tele.*

- a *El sábado por la tarde* _____
- b *El domingo por la mañana* _____
- c *El viernes después del trabajo* _____
- d *El jueves después del almuerzo* _____
- e *El martes antes de dormir* _____

PRACTICE

- 1 What activities or hobbies do you do in your own life? Practise describing your own hobbies using 'me-specific' verbs.

Example: Toco el violín.

- 2 Now practise creating sentences that add detail to basic phrases to expand on an idea. ¿Cuál es tu lugar favorito? First, think about one of your favourite places near you.

a Write a simple sentence about it in Spanish.

b Next, use the phrase *Voy a ... porque* to say why you go there, and how often you go.

c Now use the phrase *Nunca he ido a ...* to say somewhere you've never been before, but would like to go one day.

Do you build things? Do you jog every day? Do you sing ... dance ... bodybuild? Look up these 'me-specific' verbs in your dictionary.

The Spanish don't 'play' (jugar) an instrument, they 'touch' it. ¿Tocas el piano? - 'Do you play the piano?'

PUT IT TOGETHER

- 1 Write a script in which you describe several different parts of your normal routine. Think about how you can build on basic phrases to give more detailed descriptions of your daily life. You might include:

- how you get to work/school every day
- what makes up your daily routine
- your hobbies, interests, or other activities
- details of how often, when, where, why, or how.

CONVERSATION 3

Going out at night

For saying goodbye, you already know essential phrases like *¡hasta luego!* and *¡hasta la próxima!* Let's expand on that now with phrases for making plans for next time.

🔊 **08.05** Sarah and Felipe start talking about what they could do this evening. How does Felipe ask 'What are you doing after this?'

VOCAB: diminutives

-it@, -ecit@, -ill@

Spanish liberally uses diminutives, little changes in spelling that can be applied to almost any word to give it a sense of familiarity, cuteness or size. People often refer to their siblings as **hermanito** or **hermanita**, and you may remember when Sarah mentioned that her apartment has a **perrito**. Try it yourself – just take the final -a or -o in any noun and change it to **-ito/-ita/-ecito/-ecita/-illo/-illa** to give it this sense. Here, Felipe is suggesting that it's a 'nice wee party'.

Felipe: ¿Qué vas a hacer después? Espero ir al parque con unos amigos a jugar un partidillo de fútbol. ¿Te gustaría venir?

Sarah: Me encantaría, pero por desgracia ya he planeado ir de compras con alguien y, después, mi clase de cocina comienza a las cuatro de la tarde. ¡Si quieres, luego tengo tiempo libre!

Felipe: ¡Eso estaría genial! Hay una **fiestecita** en mi casa esta noche. ¡Podrías venir!

Sarah: ¡Bien! ¿Qué debo llevar? Y ¿a qué hora?

Felipe: A las nueve. Un postre sería perfecto. Por ejemplo, el arroz con leche que vas a preparar esta tarde, ¿vale?

Sarah: ¡Qué buena idea! ¿Dónde vives?

Felipe: No está lejos. Mi casa está cerca de la estación de tren.

Sarah: ¿Podrías escribir la dirección? Así puedo ponerla en el mapa de mi móvil.

FIGURE IT OUT

1 ¿Verdadero o falso? Choose either *v* or *f*.

- a** After this, Felipe is going to get a drink with his brother. v/f
- b** Felipe invites Sarah to play football with him, and then to a get-together v/f
- c** Sarah has already planned to go shopping with someone. v/f
- d** Sarah's Spanish class starts at 4 p.m. v/f

2 Find the following conversation components:

- a First find Felipe's plans for going to the park.
- b Now highlight the details (Why?) (With who?).
- c Find the phrase Sarah gives about going shopping.
- d Now highlight the detail (With who?).

NOTICE

 **08.06** Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 3

Spanish	Meaning
¿qué vas a hacer después?	what are you going to do after this?
espero ir al parque con unos amigos	I hope to go to the park with some friends
a jugar un partidillo de fútbol	to play a small football match
¿te gustaría venir?	would you like to come?
me encantaría	I'd love to
pero por desgracia ya he planeado	but unfortunately I already planned
ir de compras con alguien	to go shopping with someone
a las cuatro de la tarde	at 4 p.m.
tengo tiempo libre	I have free time
¡eso estaría genial!	that would be great!
hay una fiestecita esta noche	there's a small party tonight
¡podrías venir!	you could come!
¿qué debo llevar?	what should I bring?
¿a qué hora?	at what time?
un postre sería perfecto	a dessert would be perfect
esta tarde	this afternoon
mi casa está cerca de la estación de tren	my house is beside the train station
¿podrías escribir la dirección?	could you write the address?
así puedo ponerla en el mapa de mi móvil	so I can put it on my smartphone map

*Poner means both 'to put' and 'to wear' (to put on).
How would you say, 'What should I wear?'*

CULTURAL EXPLANATION: time in Spain

Spanish doesn't use a.m. and p.m. to indicate time of day. Instead, say:

<i>de la mañana</i>	in the morning
<i>de la tarde</i>	in the afternoon
<i>de la noche</i>	at night (lit. 'of the night')

Example:

7.00 a.m.	<i>siete de la mañana</i>
2.00 p.m.	<i>dos de la tarde</i>
11.00 p.m.	<i>once de la noche</i>

The 'o'clock' part of the time is represented by saying **a las** (*las* because it refers to *horas*: *a las 8 de la mañana* (at 8 a.m.).

1 Find phrases for 'getting the specifics' in the Essential phrases for Conversation 3, then write them out in Spanish.

- a What should I bring? _____
- b At what time? _____
- c Can you write the address? _____
- d I can put it on my smartphone map. _____

Now, use the phrases as templates to mix and match vocab to create new sentences in Spanish.

- e What should I eat? _____
- f What time does it end? (to end = *terminar*) _____
- g Do you know the address? _____
- h Where is the get-together? _____
- i When should I arrive? _____
- j Can I bring wine? (*vino*) _____

GRAMMAR EXPLANATION: would, should, could

To talk about a possible future, (what you would do) in Spanish, you just add **-ía** to the dictionary form to go with **yo** and **él/ella**.

This gives: **yo iría a España** (I would go to Spain), and
ella iría a Venezuela (she would go to Venezuela).

In grammatical terms, this is called the conditional. The other endings take the same **-ía** and add something similar to the present-form endings ('you': add **-ías**, 'we': add **-íamos**, 'they': add **-ían**).

Let's see it in action:

Compraría la casa. (They would buy the house.)
¿Hablariamos español o inglés? (Would we speak Spanish or English?)
¿Lo venderías por 50 €? (Would you sell it for €50?)

1 Practise recognizing the conditional. Circle the correct version of the conditional for each of the following:

- a I would go, but ... (voy, iría)
- b Should I ...? (debo, debería)
- c Could he go ...? (podría, puede)
- d Could you help me ...? (puedes, podrías)

2 Fill in the gaps to form the conditional in the following phrases:

- a ¡Me _____ vivir en España! (encantar)
- b Mis primos _____ contentos de (estar)
ver la película.
- c Ella _____ ir a tu casa. (intentar)
- d Yo _____ a la playa este (ir)
fin de semana, pero tengo que trabajar.
- e Me _____ ir contigo. (gustar)
- f ¿ _____ más lento, por favor? (hablar)

There are a few important verbs that don't exactly follow this pattern, such as **podría** (I could) - which is missing the **e** from **poder**, but you will learn these with time, and will be understood no problem by using what makes sense to you!

Currency symbols usually come after the number in Spanish. As well as this, commas and decimals get swapped, so '€2,200.22' would be 2200,00 €.

PRACTICE

This conversation is all about making plans. Select from the English suggestions given to complete the original sentence in Spanish in two different ways.

1 Mix and match the phrases for inviting someone to do something.

Example: *¿Comemos en un restaurante chino _____?*

(this afternoon) (Monday) (soon) (at 7 p.m.) (next week)

¿Comemos en un restaurante chino la semana que viene?

a *¿Qué haces _____?* (after this) (later) (at 5 p.m.) (tonight) (tomorrow)

b *¿Tienes tiempo libre _____ para ir al concierto?*

(after this) (later) (at 5 p.m.) (tonight) (tomorrow)

c *¡Te _____ venir!* (would like) (would love to)

2 Mix and match phrases for accepting or turning down an invitation.

a *Eso sería _____.* (cool) (perfect) (amazing) (fun) (impossible)
(too late)

b *Me encantaría, pero _____.* (unfortunately ...) (I already have plans) (I'm busy)

3 How would you say the following in Spanish?

a Would you like to learn Spanish with me? _____

b Could you ask me next time? _____

4 Practise recognizing the meaning of conditional verbs as you see them. Write the English meaning of the following Spanish phrases.

a *prepararías* _____

d *parecería* _____

b *yo sería* _____

e *podrías* _____

c *ella viajaría* _____

PUT IT TOGETHER

1 Describe what you would do on a beautiful summer day off from work. Try to include:

- ... the first thing that you would do (*primero iría ...*)
- ... what you would be eating/drinking differently
- ... what you would not have to do
- ... where you would go and how you would get there.

2 Imagine that someone has invited you to go on an exotic adventure (think hiking Machu Picchu, or participating in *la tomatina*, or something else you've never done before). You'd have a lot of questions! Create your own Spanish script using phrases and questions to discuss an invitation like this. Use your dictionary as often as you need.

- ... Say when you'd have free time and when you could go (*Podría ir ...*)
- ... Ask for details of trip – where it is, when it starts, when it ends (*¿Cuándo comienza el viaje?*)
- ... Ask about things you should bring (*¿Qué debo llevar?*)
- ... Explain how you think it would be (*Creo que sería ...*).

CULTURE TIP:

la tomatina

The *tomatina* is a festival in the village of Buñol, in Spain, where thousands of people converge once a year to throw tomatoes at one another. *¿Por qué no?*



#LANGUAGEHACK: the rephrasing technique for talking your way through complicated sentences

You're used to expressing yourself with a lot of complexity and nuance when you speak in your native language, but when you're learning a new language, you can't do this right away. Getting used to (and comfortable with) this shift is a big part of language learning. So how do you convey your more complex thoughts and feelings when you're still only working with the very basics of the language?

Hope is not lost! Expressing yourself will just require a little rephrasing – putting your ideas into simpler sentences using words and phrases you are more comfortable with. Here's how to break it down.

❖ **First, recognize that the rules of expressing yourself as an eloquent native do not (usually) apply to you.** The nuanced language you search for in your head and the desire to know how to say what you want and how to convey the right tone and courtesy ... Sometimes, you have to *just let that go*.

'Excuse me ... I'm sorry ... I just overheard you speaking Spanish ... I've actually been studying it for a while ... do you mind if I practise a few phrases with you? ... I hope I'm not bothering you ...'

❖ **Next, figure out the one core idea you're most trying to express.**

'You speak Spanish? Me too! Let's talk.'

❖ **Finally, 'piggy-back' your idea off another expression that works just as well.**

¿Hablas español? Yo también. ¡Vamos a hablar!

Back to the basics

The gist of what you're trying to say is very often quite simple.

❖ Instead of trying to say 'Would you like to dance with me?' you can say, 'Dance with me!' – *¡Baila conmigo!*

❖ Instead of trying to say 'I should avoid eating fish as much as possible due to a medical condition that I have' you can say, 'I can't eat fish because I have an allergy.' (Or in 'Tarzan Spanish', 'no fish' – *no pescado*).

❖ Instead of trying to say 'I'm looking for a flatmate who speaks Spanish and wants to rent the room for at least 12 months,' you can say something like 'I need a flat mate : 1 year. He/she speaks Spanish – *Busco compañer@ de piso: 1 año. Habla español.*

Phrases you're not sure about

In Spanish, there are a handful of unique phrases that, although common, can be challenging to put into use at first. For example, when meeting up with a friend after not seeing him for a while, we might use a phrase like *Me alegro de que ...* to describe our emotions.

However, this is a more complicated phrase that is followed by a verb tense we haven't learned yet, so what else could you say to express your happiness at seeing your friend? If you say *¡Estás aquí! ¡Estoy muy feliz!*, your friend will surely know you're thrilled to see him!

YOUR TURN: use the hack

Practise this rephrasing skill now. For each of the lines given, write an alternative (shorter) translation in Spanish that conveys a similar meaning as the original, but avoids any complicated grammar. There may be a variety of ways to say each one – just try to get the idea across as best and simply as you can.

Remember, this is a skill, which means that practice is the key to getting better.

Example: I'm probably not going to be able to go with you.

→ No puedo ir contigo. (I can't go with you.)

- a I'm not sure if they will be able to win (*ganar*) the game.


- b I'm so happy that we were able to come to the restaurant together.

- c I would really love it if you would be willing to dance with me.

- d I'd rather go to the supermarket later.

COMPLETING UNIT 8

Check your understanding

- 1  **08.07** Listen to the audio rehearsal, in which a Spanish speaker, Cristina, describes her routine as well as things she wishes she could do. Feel free to take notes or listen to it again.


○

○

○

○

○

- 2  **08.08** Now listen to the questions about what you just heard and answer them out loud in Spanish.

Show what you know ...

Here's what you've just learned. Write or say an example for each item in the list. Then tick off the ones you know.

- Write a sentence that describes a hobby.
- Give two different details about your hobby.
- Give three phrases that describe your normal routine using:
 - often
 - usually
 - sometimes
- Say 'I would be' and 'I could' in Spanish.

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION



It's time to complete your mission: give your best productivity advice to be published on your friend's blog. To do this, you might need to observe yourself and keep track of the things you do regularly. You could even read some Spanish blogs about productivity and mindfulness to help you.

Please visit www.italki.com/languagehacking

STEP 1: build your script

Keep building your script by using the phrases you've learned in this unit combined with 'me-specific' vocab to answer common questions about yourself. Be sure to:

- talk about different parts of your life and weekly routine
- describe where you go, how you get there and what you do
- include details of how often, when, where, why or how
- describe something else you would love to do but haven't done yet
- describe what you like about your routines and what could be better.


Write down your script, then repeat it until you feel confident.

STEP 2: learn from your mistakes, and others' ... *online*

The key is that if you're making mistakes, you're learning. And if you speak, you can even notice them more easily and fix them yourself. Added bonus: you can learn from the mistakes of other language hackers too. So look at the corrections and comments people leave – you'll find that your common mistakes are most likely shared.

To complete this mission, research blogs on 'routines' or 'productivity' in Spanish. Try searching online for *productividad* or *ser más productivo*.

When learning a new language, mistakes are inevitable. Part of the charm of speaking a second language is realizing that people are much less critical than you imagine!



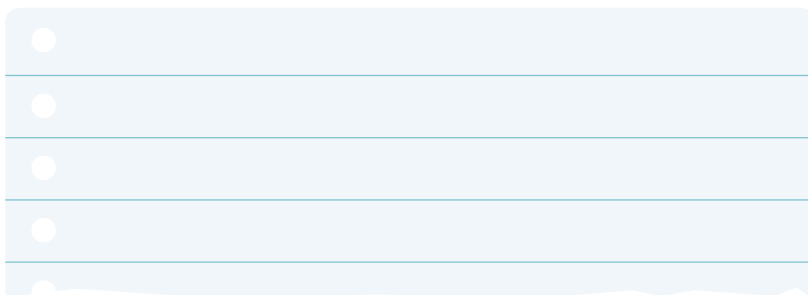
It's time to complete your mission. Share your productivity advice with the rest of the community! And in return, enjoy some free advice about how you can be more effective in your life. So go online to find your mission for Unit 8, and use the community space to find out perhaps how you can make learning Spanish part of your daily routine.

STEP 3: learn from other learners

What productivity tips can you gain from other language hackers? After you've uploaded your own clip, check out what the other people in the community have to say about their routines. **Your task is to let at least three different people know what you thought was most useful about their routine.**

This time, incorporate conversation starters, leads or extensions to help get the conversation flowing, e.g. *veo que ...* (I see that you ...).

STEP 4: reflect on what you've learned



HEY, LANGUAGE HACKER, YOU'RE ALMOST THERE!

In this unit we talked a lot about the strategy behind preparing for the kinds of conversations you are likely to have. All the scripts you've been building are preparing you for this ultimate goal.

With the strategies you'll learn next in Missions 9 and 10, you will be amazed at how well your first conversation goes ...

¡Ya queda poco!

9

DESCRIBE IT!



Your mission

Imagine this – you’re applying to be a tour guide in a Spanish-speaking city. You have to prove your ability to describe a place in detail and give recommendations for where to hang out and what to do.

Your mission is to pass for a local by **describing a city that you know well** (or want to know well!). Be prepared to do your research and give a short description of the highlights of what to do and see – **describe the best places, explain their characteristics**, and say what might suit **different personalities** best. But here’s the twist – don’t say the name of the city. See if others can *guess* where you’re describing!

This mission will help you communicate more creatively, by explaining the characteristics of the world around you in more detail.

Mission prep

- ❖ Say what you miss using *echar de menos*.
- ❖ Describe places, and where you live – *vivo en el campo*.
- ❖ Describe the weather and environment – *hace calor*.
- ❖ Describe people and their personalities – *ella es aventurera*.
- ❖ Describe what someone or something looks like – *parece*.
- ❖ Learn phrases for shopping – *el más barato, pagar en efectivo*.

BUILDING LANGUAGE FOR DESCRIBING THE WORLD AROUND YOU

You’re getting closer to your first conversation with a native in Spanish! You know how to say who the important people are in your life and what they do, but now you’ll describe their personalities and characteristics as well. With this new vocab, you can express your thoughts more creatively in Spanish – when you can’t think of a word you need, just *describe it* instead!



#LANGUAGEHACK

use your hidden moments to get Spanish immersion for the long term

CONVERSATION 1

Describing the city

People from other countries will be interested to hear where you're from, and how it's different from where they're from. Let's prepare you for these conversation topics by building your script to describe different places.

Sarah is getting ready to fly back to the United States, and she's thinking about what she misses about home. She describes her hometown to Felipe as they're hanging out by the *Manzanares* river on a sunny day.

🔊 09.01 How does Sarah say she's 'going back' to the United States?

VOCAB: *echo de menos*

This is how the Spanish say 'I miss (something/ someone)', but in Latin America they'll typically use the verb *extrañar* to say 'I miss you': *te extraño*. *Echar* can mean many other things, like 'to throw' and is even used in expressions like *echar una mano* (to lend a hand).

Sarah: Pronto vuelvo a los Estados Unidos. ¡Es mi última semana en Madrid!

Felipe: ¡Qué pena! ¿Estás preparada para volver a casa?

Sarah: Me encanta Madrid, ¿pero sabes que vivo en el campo? *Echo de menos* las montañas, así como el lago y el bosque que hay cerca de mi casa. ¡Pero también voy a echar de menos Madrid, por supuesto!

Felipe: Lo sé. ¡Te voy a echar de menos! Eh, tengo una idea ... ¿Por qué no compras regalos para tu familia y para recordar Madrid?

Sarah: Buena idea. ¡Me encanta ir de compras! ¿Dónde debo comprarlos?

Felipe: Hmm ... Depende. ¿Conoces la Gran Vía? Es más bonita que los centros comerciales, y la avenida es larga y ancha, ¡con muchas cosas que ver!

Sarah: No sé ... Hoy hace mucho sol. Ya tengo calor ... ¡No puedo pasar toda la tarde al sol! Voy a estar cansada.

Felipe: Pero hay muchos árboles en la avenida, así que no va a hacer calor. Además, ¡vas a estar dentro de las tiendas!

Sarah: ¡En ese caso, sí! ¡Vamos!

FIGURE IT OUT

By now you have a great base of Spanish vocabulary, so to level up, you should take charge of your learning and actively take note of any new words you come across, to add to your scripts and study materials.

1 Underline the word(s) that make each of these sentences *falso*, and write out the corresponding word that would be *verdadero* in Spanish.

- a It's Sarah's last day in Madrid. _____
- b Sarah and Felipe are planning to go dancing. _____
- c The avenue has a lot of museums. _____

2 Use context to figure out the meaning of the following:

- a ¡Qué pena! _____
- b depende _____
- c pronto vuelvo a los Estados Unidos

3 Write the following phrases in Spanish.

- a in the countryside _____
- b the mountains _____
- c the lake and the forest _____
- d on the street _____
- e under the sun _____



VOCAB: recordar
'to remember' and 'to remind'

In Spanish, **recordar** can mean both 'to remember' and 'to remind'. You can tell which it is, because 'remind' usually has a person as an object. **No recuerdo su nombre** (I don't remember her name), **¿Puedes recordarme tu dirección?** (Could you remind me what your address is?).

VOCAB: tener calor
You've seen some cases where Spanish uses **tener** (to have) when we would say 'to be' in English, like **tengo hambre** (I'm hungry), **tienes razón** (you are right) and **tengo calor** (I'm hot / I feel warm). You can also say **tenemos frío** (we're cold).

NOTICE

🔊 **09.02** Listen to the audio and study the table. Repeat out loud to try to mimic the speakers.

Essential phrases for Conversation 1

Spanish	Meaning
¡qué pena!	that's a pity!
volver a casa	return home
en el campo	in the countryside
echo de menos ...	I miss ...
las montañas	the mountains
así como ...	as well as ...
el lago y el bosque	the lake and the forest
¡te voy a echar de menos!	I will miss you!
comprar regalos	buy gifts
para recordar Madrid	to remember Madrid
larga y ancha	long and wide
muchas cosas que ver	many things to see (many things that to-see)
hace mucho sol	it's very sunny
hace calor	it's hot
tengo calor	I'm hot
toda la tarde al sol	all afternoon in the sun
estar cansad@	to be tired
dentro de las tiendas	inside the shops
en ese caso, sí	in that case, yes

1 Review the phrase list to answer questions in Spanish about the conversation.

Example: **¿Qué cosas** echa de menos Sarah?

→ Sarah echa de menos las montañas, el lago y el bosque.

- a** **¿Cuándo** vuelve Sarah a los Estados Unidos? Sarah _____
- b** **¿Qué** va a comprar Sarah para su familia? Sarah va _____
- c** **¿Por qué otra razón** va a comprar regalos Sarah? Porque _____
- d** **¿Dónde** va a comprarlos? Sarah va _____

2 How would you say each of the following in Spanish? Fill in the gaps to complete each sentence.

a Could you **remind me** of the restaurant's name? *¿Podrías _____ el nombre del restaurante?*

b I'll **remind you** how to do it. *Voy a _____ cómo hacerlo.*

c He has **reminded me** of my appointment. *_____ ha _____ mi cita.*

3 Match the Spanish phrases to the English expressions. Notice that some of the Spanish phrases can have more than one meaning in English.

1 I'm sorry to hear that. 2 That's a shame! 3 I'm not sure. 4 It depends. 5 In that case. 6 I'm ready.

a _____ *Estoy listo.*

c _____ *Siento oír eso.*

e _____ *¡Qué pena!*

b _____ *En ese caso.*

d _____ *No estoy seguro.*

f _____ *Depende.*

4 A good memory technique is to learn vocab in 'clusters' – learning words of a similar category together. Fill in this vocab cluster for words dealing with nature and landscape.

Nature and landscape vocab

Spanish	Meaning	Spanish	Meaning
	the countryside		the forest
	the mountains		the trees
	the lake		the sun
la ciudad	the city		

5 Translate the questions into Spanish, then follow them with an answer about yourself in Spanish.

a Do you live in the countryside, or in a city? *¿Vives _____ ?*

b Are there a lot of trees on your street? *¿Hay muchos _____ en tu calle?*

c Is it better to spend time near the lake, the forest, or the mountains?

¿Es mejor pasar tiempo cerca del _____ ?

PRACTICE

1 Look up new words you need to describe where you live. Do you live near the ocean? In the suburbs? In a studio apartment? Add your 'me-specific' vocab to the Landscape vocab list.

2 Now create your own sentences in Spanish to describe where you live.

a I live ... _____

b Near my house, there is/there are ... _____

3 Then do the same about a family member or friend.

a He/she lives ... _____

b Near his/her/their house, there is/there are ... _____

VOCAB EXPLANATION: talking about the weather

¿Qué tiempo hace? – What's the weather like?

Most of the time, to describe the weather, you'll simply need to say **hace** + **description**:

Hace ... buen tiempo (nice) *mal tiempo* (bad)

calor (hot) *frío* (cold) *sol* (sunny) *viento* (windy).

Two important exceptions are: *Está lloviendo* – (it's raining), and *Está nublado* (it's cloudy).

1 Practise creating new sentences in Spanish to describe the weather.

a It's nice out. _____

b The weather is bad. What a pity! _____

c It's cold near the lake. _____

2 Use *hace* or *está* to describe the weather where you are right now.

PUT IT TOGETHER

Describe where you live, or a place that you love to visit, including descriptive adjectives and nouns.

● ❖ What is the landscape like?

● ❖ What is the weather usually like?

● ❖ What would you miss if you were to leave?

CONVERSATION 2

What would you buy for someone who ...

Now let's focus on a whole new set of descriptive words you can use to talk about people and their personalities.

Sarah and Felipe have made it to the *Gran Vía* to begin shopping, and they discuss what gifts Sarah should get for her family based on their personalities.

🔊 09.03 What words does Sarah use to describe her sister, brother, and parents?

Sarah: ¡Esta avenida es impresionante! ¡Hay tantas tiendas!

Felipe: ¿Ya sabes qué quieres comprar?

Sarah: Quiero comprarme un montón de cosas, pero para mi familia ... ¡ni idea!

Felipe: ¿Cómo son?

Sarah: Es difícil describirlos. Por ejemplo, mi hermana es una aventurera y quiere venir a España algún día. ¿Quizás algunos recuerdos típicos de Madrid para ella?

Felipe: ¿Por qué no un vestido y un poco de jamón? ¡Y más jamón para nosotros!

Sarah: ¡Por supuesto! Mi hermano es joven y seguro que pensaría que un recuerdo sería aburrido. ¿Qué le comprarías a una persona que adora los videojuegos?

Felipe: No necesitas encontrar algo español. ¡Puedes buscar algo para sus juegos! ¿Sabías que la tecnología es **más barata** aquí?

Sarah: Ah, sí, eso me recuerda que sus auriculares son bastante viejos y no funcionan bien. Quiere unos nuevos.

Felipe: ¿Y tus padres? No puedes olvidar comprar algo para ellos.

Sarah: Mis padres son bastante tradicionales. Me han dicho que quieren un **buen vino** español.

Felipe: ¡Eso está hecho! Hay una bodega al cruzar la calle. Podríamos comprar otra botella para nosotros. ¡Solo para probarla!

CULTURE TIP: *haggling and street markets*

While the *Gran Vía* is gorgeous to visit, my favourite spot for shopping is actually the *Rastro* (an open-air market) at *La Latina* district. I love to **regatear** (haggle) to get a good deal there. It's more fun than when you know the price is standard, and excellent for Spanish practice!

GRAMMAR TIP:

adjectives first
You'll usually see adjectives follow nouns, but there are some cases where they can come before, with a subtle change in meaning. When this happens, you can see that *bueno* gets shortened to *buen*.

FIGURE IT OUT

1 ¿Verdadero o falso? Select the correct answer.

- a Sarah is shopping for her friends. verdadero / falso
- b Sarah's brother doesn't like souvenirs. verdadero / falso
- c Sarah knows exactly what to buy. verdadero / falso

2 Answer these questions in Spanish.

- a What kind of gift is Sarah going to get her sister? _____

- b Why? How does Sarah describe her? *Ella es* _____

- c How does Sarah describe her brother? *Él es* _____

- d How does Sarah describe her parents? *Son* _____

- e What does Felipe say about technology in Spain?
Es _____

3 Find and highlight the adjectives:

- a impressive c typical e old g traditional
- b adventurous d boring f new

4 Find the following phrases. Write out the parts in bold in Spanish.

- a do you **already** know ... ? _____
- b I'd like to buy **a lot of things** _____
- c they are **quite** old _____
- d is technology **cheaper** here? _____
- e a souvenir **would be boring** _____

NOTICE

🔊 09.04 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 2

Spanish	Meaning
impresionante	impressive
quiero comprarme	I want to buy myself
ni idea	I've no idea
¿cómo son?	how are they?
es difícil describirlos	it's hard to describe them
mi hermano es joven	my brother is young
pensaría que ...	he would think that ...
sería aburrido	it would be boring
¿qué le comprarías a una persona que ...?	what would you buy for someone who ...?
más barat@	cheaper
me recuerda	it reminds me
bastante viejos	quite old
no funcionan bien	they don't work well
unos nuevos	new ones
¿y tus padres?	what about your parents?
un buen vino español	a good Spanish wine
al cruzar la calle	across the street
solo para probarla	just to try it

1 Write out the following phrases in Spanish:

- a that reminds me _____
- b what should I buy _____
- c there are so many shops _____
- d really boring _____

GRAMMAR TIP: *some adjectives don't change!*

Some Spanish adjectives don't change for masculine/feminine, they stay the same. This is particularly common among adjectives ending in -e or a consonant. Less to learn for you!

2 Another effective memory technique is to learn words in pairs with their opposites. Use the adjectives from the phrase list, or a dictionary, to complete the sentences.

- a** No es _____, es _____. (It's not **easy**, it's **hard**.)
- b** No es _____, es _____. (It's not **unique**, it's **typical**.)
- c** No son _____, son _____.
(They aren't **stupid**, they are **intelligent**.)
- d** No son _____, son _____.
(They aren't **modern**, they are **traditional**.)
- e** No es _____, es _____.
(She's not **adventurous**, she is **shy**.)
- f** No es _____, es _____. (He's not **old**, he's **young**.)

3 Use the different forms given to create six sentences describing people and things. Be sure to use the correct word order and gender/plural agreement.

<i>mi hermano</i>	<i>está</i>	<i>abierta</i>
<i>mi hermana</i>	<i>están</i>	<i>abiertas</i>
<i>mis hermanos</i>	<i>estaría</i>	<i>alto</i>
<i>mis hermanas</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>alta</i>
<i>la tienda</i>	<i>son</i>	<i>altos</i>
<i>las tiendas</i>		<i>altas</i>


- a** The shop is open. _____
- b** The shops are open. _____
- c** The shop would be open. _____
- d** My brother is tall. _____
- e** My brothers are tall. _____
- f** My sister is tall. _____
- g** My sisters are tall. _____

PRACTICE

- How would you say 'It's the cheapest' in Spanish? _____
- Practise forming the new adjectives you've learned according to gender. Fill in the missing words in the table, which are grouped by opposites. Include both the masculine and feminine forms (if they are different). Use your dictionary to look them up if you need to.

Describing people

Spanish (m/f)	Meaning	Spanish (m/f)	Meaning
	shy/timid	aventurer@	
	ugly	guap@	
viej@			young
rar@			typical
	unpleasant	simpático	
	pessimistic	optimista	
	proud	modest@	
	fun	seri@	

-  **09.05** Look at the English adjectives given, which are all cognates of Spanish. How do you think you would pronounce them in Spanish? Listen to the audio to check your answers.

a attractive **c** creative **e** honest **g** sincere **i** ignorant
b attentive **d** curious **f** intelligent **h** tolerant **j** impatient

- Use adjectives to describe yourself and people around you. Complete the sentences with words that are true for you. Be sure to use the correct gender, and look up words in your dictionary if you need to.

- Soy _____. Mi trabajo es _____.
- Mi papá/amigo/hermano es _____. Su casa es _____.
- Mi mamá/amiga/hermana es _____.

A lot of Spanish adjectives are cognates of English, which means that when you're speaking Spanish naturally in a conversation, you can often guess the Spanish form of an English adjective you know - just be sure to say it with Spanish pronunciation. Try it!

PUT IT TOGETHER

1 When you meet someone new, they'll often ask you about the people in your life. Prepare for these questions by creating a script in which you explain the personalities of at least two important people in your life. Make your script as 'me-specific' as possible by looking up any new descriptive words now, so you'll have them ready during your conversations.

- Describe two different people in your life.
- Use adjectives to describe their personalities.
- Be sure that your adjectives agree with the person in gender and number.

A large light blue rectangular area with a torn bottom edge, containing 18 horizontal lines for writing. Each line begins with a small white circle.

CONVERSATION 3

It looks like ...

Sarah is looking for headphones for her brother. She asks Felipe for advice on which ones are best.

🔊 09.06 Which phrase does Sarah use to ask, 'Are these OK?'

Sarah: Parece que esta tienda vende auriculares.

Felipe: ¿Para qué tipo de juegos los usa tu hermano?

Sarah: Para videojuegos en línea. ¿Estos están bien?

Felipe: No, los negros son para correr. Los mejores auriculares para él serían los verdes. Además, estos son de mejor calidad.

Sarah: ¿Cómo lo sabes?

Felipe: Conozco la marca. Son un poco caros, pero hoy cuestan la mitad. ¡Están de oferta! A tu hermano le van a encantar.

Sarah: ¡Que buena idea! ... Con ese precio no puedo pagar en efectivo, tengo que usar mi tarjeta de crédito.

Felipe: No hay problema. ¡Vamos a la caja a pagar! ¡Vas a ser la hermana más guay del mundo!

By knowing how to describe things in Spanish, you'll have a handy new trick up your sleeve to use in Spanish conversations. When you can't think of a particular word for something, you can just *describe it* instead!

FIGURE IT OUT

- The following statements are *falso*. Underline the word(s) that make each one incorrect, and write the correct phrase in Spanish.
 - Sarah's brother uses the headphones for jogging. _____
 - The headphones are not expensive. _____
 - Sarah is going to pay in cash. _____
- Circle the two ways of paying mentioned. What do you think the phrase *con ese precio* means? _____
- Answer the questions in Spanish.
 - Which headphones are better for jogging? *Los* _____.
 - Which headphones are better for Sarah's brother? *Los* _____.
- Highlight the phrase meaning 'they would be'.

NOTICE

🔊 09.07 Listen to the audio and study the table.

Essential phrases for Conversation 3

Spanish	Meaning
esta tienda vende	this shop sells
para qué tipo	for what type
los usa	he uses them
¿estos están bien?	are these ones good?
los ... negros	the ... black ones
... verdes	... green ones
serían ...	they would be ...
mejores	the best ones
además	besides
estos son de mejor calidad	these ones are better quality
conozco la marca	I recognize the brand
son caros	they are expensive
cuestan la mitad	they cost half
están de oferta	they're on offer
le van a encantar	he will love them
el precio	the price
pagar ... en efectivo	to pay ... in cash
... con tarjeta de crédito	... with credit card
la caja	the register
el más guay	the coolest

Whenever you want to say things like 'the big one', 'the blue one', 'the small ones', 'the black ones', etc., in Spanish you don't need to translate 'one'. Simply using *el/la/los/las* before the adjective works.

You'll recognize a lot of familiar brands in other countries, and you can use this to your advantage when you're trying to describe what you want.

You've learned to describe people and places in Conversations 1 and 2. Now, notice the new vocabulary you can use to describe things.

1 What phrases could you use to say ...

a ... what something looks like? _____

b ... what you use something for? _____

2 Underline two uses of the verb *usar*.

3 If you needed to describe an item to a shopkeeper, you could use the following phrases. Write them out here in Spanish.

a this one _____ c the small one _____

b the black one _____ d the new one _____

4 If you don't know the word for the item, you could also just say the name of *la marca* (the brand). Which international brands could you use to ask these questions?

a *¿Venden _____?* (shoe brand)

b *Quiero un _____.* (tissue brand)

c *Bebo _____.* (beer/cola brand)

d *Quiero comprar un _____.* (computer brand)

e *¿Puedo ir al trabajo con tu _____?* (car brand)

5 How would you say the following expressions related to purchases?

a a little expensive _____

b pay in cash _____

c use my credit card _____

d the register _____



PRACTICE

1 Create questions you could use to ask about things in Spanish.

a How much does the big one cost (*cuesta*)?

¿_____?

b Is it good quality? *¿Es de buena* _____?

c Can I use it now? *¿*_____?

d Do you accept credit cards? *¿*_____?

e Can I pay in cash? *¿*_____?

2 Fill in the blanks with the missing words in Spanish.

a *¿Puedo ver* _____ *_____*? (Can I see the red ones?)

b *No conozco* _____ *_____*. (I don't know that brand.)

c *Voy a pagar a* _____ *_____*. (I'll pay at the register.)

d *Quiero el* _____ *de la izquierda*. (I want the big one on the left.)

3 Fill in any missing translations in the table.

Describing things

Spanish	Meaning	Spanish	Meaning
larg@		amarill@	yellow
cort@	short	roj@	red
	wide	azul	blue
	good quality	blanc@	white
de mala calidad			green
pesad@		negr@	

PUT IT TOGETHER

¿Qué buscas? (What are you looking for?)

Build sentences you could use to describe something you were looking for, wanted to buy, or lost. Think of one or two items to describe, then be as creative as you can to describe the item without using the word. Details to include:

- what it looks like and what you use it for
- what brand it is and what colour it is
- 'this one', 'that one', or 'the ... one'
- other descriptive adjectives that you know!

<input type="radio"/> Busco ...
<input type="radio"/>
<input type="radio"/>
<input type="radio"/>
<input type="radio"/>
<input type="radio"/>
<input type="radio"/>
<input type="radio"/>





#LANGUAGEHACK: use hidden moments to get Spanish immersion for the long term

Rather than thinking about how many months or years it may take to learn Spanish, a more effective learning strategy is to focus instead on the *minutes* that it takes.

Don't overlook the value of these short periods of time! They really add up, and more importantly, they're a great way to consistently keep up momentum in your learning.

Not everyone has a few hours every day to devote to Spanish. But everyone has a few minutes. Even if you live a busy lifestyle, you can still find '**hidden moments**' throughout your day for Spanish practice. Standing in line in the supermarket, waiting for the lift, sitting on a bus, train, or taxi, waiting for a tardy friend ... all of these are perfect moments for squeezing Spanish practice into your daily life, to make language learning a habit.

Spanish immersion – from anywhere

As you've followed Sarah's story, perhaps you thought, 'Well, she's quite lucky to go to Spain to improve her Spanish through immersion!' But in fact, **you** can also create a Spanish immersion environment, from anywhere in the world, no matter where you live – thanks to technology. In fact, you can create an at-home immersion environment in loads of different ways:

- You can connect with other learners (like you've been doing with our online community!) to get practice with them through regular video/audio calls.
- You can listen to live streaming radio or watch streaming video from a Spanish-speaking country online.
- Do you play *videojuegos en línea* (online videogames)? You can change the language settings on your games to Spanish and play against others online in Spanish too!
- You can also change the language of websites you use often and even change your computer and smartphone operating system to Spanish.

LEARNING STRATEGY: *language hacking on the go*

When I'm in language-learning mode, I use a vocab study app on the go, whenever I have to wait somewhere. Since my smartphone is with me anyway, I use it to learn what I can, when I can, even if it's just a word or two. See our Resources online for some suggestions.


YOUR TURN: use the hack

- 1 Pick a few apps and online resources (find our recommendations in our online resources) to start with, and add them to your computer or smartphone now so they are ready and waiting for you during your hidden moments.
- 2 Look at the websites, apps, games, browsers and even the operating system you use the most, and see if they have an option to change the language to Spanish. Since you are already used to the interface and know where you'd normally click or tap, why not go ahead and change the language? ←


You'll see it's not that bad, and you can always change it back if you find it too hard. Usually, you'll just need to look for *idioma* under *ajustes/ configuración*.

COMPLETING UNIT 9

Check your understanding

- 1  **09.08** Listen to this audio rehearsal, which has someone describing their environment and the people around them. Feel free to take notes or listen to it multiple times.

•
•
•
•
•
•
•

- 2  **09.09** Now listen to the questions about the audio rehearsal you just heard and try to answer them in Spanish.

Show what you know ...

Here's what you've just learned. Write or say an example for each item in the list. Then tick off the ones you know.

- Say something you miss using *echar de menos* (or *extrañar*).
- Give two sentences describing where you live.
- Say 'it's hot', 'it's cold' and 'it's raining'.
- Give a sentence that uses an adjective to describe a family member's personality. Put the adjective in the right word order and gender.
- Use three different adjectives to describe your favourite clothes in Spanish. Put the adjectives in the right word order and gender.
- Ask the questions:
 - Can I pay in cash?
 - Can I pay with a credit card?



COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

It's time to complete your mission: pass for a local and use your descriptive language to point out the best places in town to a foreigner. To do this, you'll need to describe the details and characteristics of different places, people and things.

Please visit www.italki.com/languagehacking

STEP 1: build your script

Build a script to help you give more detailed descriptions of places, people and things. Be sure to:

- describe what it's like in your favourite city
- say what type of landscape is nearby
- say what the weather is usually like
- explain what the houses, apartments or neighbourhoods look like
- describe the personalities of people living there
- incorporate new verbs you've learned (*echar de menos, volver, comprar, usar*)
- match adjectives to the gender and number of the objects they describe.

Write down your script, then repeat it until you feel confident.

STEP 2: a little goes a long way ... online

This is your last dress rehearsal before you speak one-on-one with a native speaker!

If you're feeling good about your script, go ahead and give it another go! Go online, find your unit 9 mission, and share your recording with the community for feedback and encouragement.

STEP 3: learn from other learners

How did other hackers describe their city? After you've uploaded your own clip, check out what the other people in the community have to say. What city are they describing? Would you hire them as a tour guide? Ask them two more questions about the city.

Think about your favourite city. What does it look like? How is the landscape? How would you describe the buildings, the atmosphere and the people?

Learn every day, even if it's just a little. You will learn more if you distribute your practice.

You may know how to form many masculine and feminine adjectives, but when you're speaking spontaneously, don't stress over getting these forms right. If you use whichever form you remember, the person you're speaking to will still understand you!



STEP 4: reflect on what you've learned

Did you learn any new words or phrases in the community space? Did you find a new place to add to your bucket list? What did you learn about the gaps in your scripts?

-
-
-
-
-

HEY, LANGUAGE HACKER, ARE YOU READY?

You've just learned how to describe pretty much anything, as well as how to work around any gaps you may have in your Spanish. I know you're ready for the ultimate mission – do you?

¿Estás list@? ¡Vamos!

10 HAVING YOUR FIRST CONVERSATION



Your mission

You've worked hard. You've kept at it. And now, you're armed with a solid base in the Spanish language. More importantly, you know how to use clever #languagehacks and conversation strategies to make the Spanish phrases you know stretch even further for you.

Your mission is to have a one-on-one conversation – online with video on – with a native Spanish speaker.

This mission will set you up with the phrases, the confidence, and an insider look at how to have your first conversation in Spanish – even if you don't think you're ready.

Mission prep

- Apply what you've learned in the context of a first conversation.
- Prepare the essential phrases you need to have a conversation.
- Develop the mindset to overcome nerves; don't worry about the grammar.
- Find a language partner, and schedule your first conversation!

BUILDING LANGUAGE FOR HAVING A CONVERSATION

Here's where all of the vocabulary – and just as importantly – all of the conversation strategies you've learned over the past nine units come into play. You're going to have your first 'face-to-face' conversation with another Spanish speaker!

One-on-one conversations with a native can be intimidating, and that's why I like to *cheat* - by having my first few conversations in a new language with a partner online. This takes off the pressure, and you have the added luxury of being able to quickly search for words or phrases with online translators and dictionaries. Let's take a look at how you can strategize your own first conversations!



#LANGUAGEHACK

develop a cheat sheet and go into 'autopilot' during your first conversation

YOUR FIRST CONVERSATION

HACK IT:

'Groundhog-Day' your way to fluency

Thanks to the Internet, you can have the same 'first conversation' over again with different language partners until you feel comfortable with it. After this, you can speak with the same people again to push yourself further.

I suggest you use this phrase even if you already know the name of your language partner in advance. After all, the point of this conversation is to practise using phrases you know!

You haven't learned how to say, 'thank you for being patient with me' yet. Notice how this is rephrased by the language hacker.

Listen to this sample 'first' conversation between a language hacker and his Spanish conversation partner, Cecilia.

🔊 10.01 As you listen, underline any words or phrases you'd like to use in your own first conversation with a native speaker.

- Cecilia:** ¡Hola!
- Language hacker:** Hola, ¿cómo te llamas?
- Cecilia:** Me llamo Cecilia, ¿y tú?
- Language hacker:** Me llamo Benny.
- Cecilia:** Encantada, Benny. Dime, ¿vives aquí?
- Language hacker:** Soy irlandés, pero ahora vivo en Nueva York.
- Cecilia:** Ah, ¡qué interesante! Irlanda. Nunca he estado en Irlanda. Pero visité Nueva York una vez, a los 20 años. ¿Has estado en España?
- Language hacker:** No, aún no. Algún día espero ... Lo siento, he comenzado las clases de español hace solo unas semanas. ¿Puedes hablar más lento?
- Cecilia:** ¡Oh, por supuesto!
- Language hacker:** Eres muy paciente. Gracias por hablar conmigo. Así que, ¿desde cuándo enseñas español?



PUT YOUR CONVERSATION STRATEGIES INTO ACTION

Every conversation has a certain ‘formula’ – phrases that you can expect the conversation to include. We’ve talked a lot about this throughout this course. You can use the expected nature of conversations to your advantage.

🔊 **10.02** Imagine that you’re talking with our native Spanish speaker, Cecilia, for your own first conversation in Spanish. In this case, the conversation will flow in a slightly different way. Use the prompts given to practise applying the phrases you know, and fill in the gaps in the conversation.

Cecilia: Hola, encantada.

Language hacker: _____

(Greet your language partner.)

Cecilia: Me llamo Cecilia, ¿y tú?

Language hacker: _____

(Give your name and ask if you can speak in the tú form.)

Cecilia: ¡Sí, por supuesto!

Language hacker: _____

(Thank her for talking with you today.)

Cecilia: No hay problema, es un placer. ¿Por qué aprendes español?

Language hacker: _____

(Answer her question about why you’re learning Spanish.)

Cecilia: ¡Qué bien! ¿Quieres hablar otros idiomas?

Language hacker: _____

(Say whether or not you want to speak any other languages.)

Cecilia: ¡Mi alumno canadiense dice que ese idioma es muy difícil!

Language hacker: _____

(Say that you couldn’t understand what she said. Ask her to write it out.)

Cecilia: Claro. Mi estudiante de Canadá, Eric, dice que ese idioma no es fácil.

Don't take corrections personally. Your language partner knows the reason you're there is to improve your Spanish. By correcting you, they're helping you do that!

Now that you’ve seen a first conversation in action, let’s start preparing you for the real thing.



#LANGUAGEHACK: develop a cheat sheet to go into 'autopilot' during your first conversation

Here's how I know you can handle this conversation, even if you think you're not ready: because you're going to 'cheat', so to speak.

There is no shame in 'cheating' here. **This isn't an exam. This is a conversation.** Consider your cheat sheet as stabilizers, or training wheels. It will help you make the transition from studying Spanish to *speaking* Spanish. Using a cheat sheet now gives you momentum so you become experienced at speaking over less time.

The way I like to prepare for my conversations online is to write up a cheat sheet of the words and phrases I plan to use during the conversation – and because I'm having my first conversation online, I can have my cheat sheet right in front of me (on paper, another window, or another device), the whole time.

We'll do the same thing for you. You're going to have your own phrases ready, planned out and written out in front of you, so you'll be able to glance at them while you're speaking Spanish. This way, it doesn't matter if your mind goes blank. You'll just take a breath, and look at your cheat sheet.

Let's get to work preparing your cheat sheet. I like to separate mine into four parts:

- 1 Essential phrases
- 2 Survival phrases
- 3 Questions I plan to ask
- 4 'Me-specific' phrases.

ESSENTIAL PHRASES

My essential phrases are the words and phrases I know I'll need to use in every conversation. These are usually greetings and sign-off words, as well as questions I expect to be asked and my planned answers.

I've started you off with some suggestions. Write out the ones you plan to use in Spanish, and then add some new ones of your own.

Essential Phrases

(Refer to Units 1–3 for inspiration.)

Greetings

¡Hola! ¿Qué tal?
Gracias por hablar
conmigo.

Sign offs

¡Hasta la próxima!
Bueno, tengo que
terminar la clase.

Don't worry about thinking up every possible word or phrase you might need. Instead, let the language tell you what you need to learn. Use the language you know now in natural conversation - however much or little it may be - and you'll quickly learn the 'me - specific' phrases that you haven't (yet!) added to your script.

(Refer to Units 1–6 for inspiration.)

Typical questions

¿Cómo te llamas?
¿De dónde eres?/¿Dónde
vives?
¿Dónde trabajas?
¿Por qué aprendes español?
¿Hablas otros idiomas?

Prepared answers

SURVIVAL PHRASES FOR WHEN I NEED HELP

Don't be afraid of making mistakes in Spanish. Instead, expect them. Prepare for them. Have a plan for dealing with difficult moments. Even if you forget every word you know or can't understand a single word the other person is saying, you can still have a conversation if you've prepared your survival phrases.

I've started you off with some suggestions. Add some new ones of your own.

Survival phrases

(Refer to Units 1–3 for inspiration.)

While ideally we'd always form full, grammatically correct sentences, in the heat of the moment there is a lot to think about. Don't worry about saying single words to get your point across. You can always add a *por favor* to the end to make sure your partner knows you don't mean to be impolite!

Full phrases

¿Puedes esperar un momento?

¿Puedes escribirlo?

¿Puedes repetir?

Más lento, por favor.

No entiendo eso.

Or shorten them!

Un momento.

Escribir, por favor.

¿Repetir?

¿Lento?

¿Cómo?

QUESTIONS I PLAN TO ASK

Plan out a few questions that you can ask the other person. You can use them to take the pressure off you, while the other person talks for a while. And they are great to have ready for when there's a lull in the conversation.

I've started you off with a few good options, but make sure you add some more of your own.

- questions about life in the other person's country (*¿Hace frío en Perú?*)
- questions about the Spanish language (*¿Qué significa 'diario'?*)
- questions about the other person's life, work, family or hobbies (*¿Qué quieres hacer el fin de semana?*).

Prepared questions

(Refer to Units 2–9 for inspiration.)

¿Hace calor en _____ ?

¿Desde cuándo enseñas _____ ?

¿Sabe hablar _____ ?

¿Cómo se dice... en español _____ ?

¿Crees que _____ ?

Speaking Spanish with a new person gives you an opportunity to learn about that person's life, language and culture! I make sure to prepare in advance if there's anything in particular I'm curious to know.



'ME-SPECIFIC' PHRASES I WANT TO PRACTISE

These are the conversation topics specific to me that I want to practise talking about. Things like my interests, what I've been doing lately, what my upcoming plans are, and the people in my life.

In your first conversation, if you've practised your essential phrases and your survival phrases, everything from there is just bonus!

In my online conversations, I like to create a goal of a few new phrases I want to practise during each conversation. But keep it to just a few (2–5 phrases), which is plenty to accomplish in your first conversation. You could prepare to talk about:

- what you're interested in (*¡Me encanta la ciencia ficción!*)
- what you've been doing today or lately (*He leído un artículo sobre los trenes de España.*)
- what your upcoming plans are (*Quiero bailar este fin de semana.*)
- the people in your life (*Mi novia habla un poco de italiano.*)

'Me-specific' phrases

Me encanta/me gusta ...

Quiero ...

Mis padres ...

GETTING READY FOR YOUR FIRST CONVERSATION

I highly suggest having your first few conversations online with video enabled. Technology really is your friend in this situation. In an online chat, you can easily refer to your notes, look up words, or put phrases you need into an online translator – all *during* the conversation.

If all else fails, you can have an entire conversation in Spanish even if you only know these three phrases: **No entiendo eso. ¿Puedes escribirlo? Un momento.** Don't believe me? Envision it. Worst-case scenario:

- Your conversation partner says *hola*, you say *hola* (success!). But then she says, \$%(&!¿?¡~#! And your mind goes blank.
- You reply with **No entiendo eso. ¿Puedes escribirlo, por favor?**
- She types out what she said and sends it to you via chat. You select what she wrote, copy and paste it and quickly find a translation. Ah, you think, I understand! But now it's your turn to respond, and your mind, again, goes blank.
- You say, **Un momento.** She waits patiently while you type what you want to say in English into your online translator. You hit enter and get a translation in Spanish. You read out the words in your best Spanish accent.
- Rinse and repeat.

Is this scenario ideal? No. But is it better than not having a conversation at all? *Absolutely.*

Luckily, you've already been preparing for this moment for the past nine missions. So you're ready – even if you think you're not. Trust me on this. Here's how I suggest you set yourself up for your conversation:

- Open up your cheat sheet and keep it within easy view.
- Have your translation tool ready.
- Just before your conversation, practise listening to and repeating some Spanish audio (we'll give you one to start with).

Automatic translation is never a replacement for language learning, but it works as a crutch in a pinch!

In fact, you'd be surprised by how much you'd learn even in this worst-case scenario. Even if you forgot every single phrase you learned in Spanish except these three, you could have a conversation (of sorts) in Spanish with another person. And you would learn loads of Spanish by the end of it.

This will get your ears and your tongue 'warmed up' for the conversation. We've provided one for you at the end of this unit. Additional audio resources are recommended in our Resources.

HANDLING YOUR NERVES

It's common for beginners to fear being judged by a native speaker. If you're doing a language exchange and plan to also help your partner with their English, then she may be worried more about how her English sounds than how you sound speaking Spanish. Or if you're working with a tutor, he may be hoping to make a good first impression. The other person is probably just as nervous as you! Keep this in mind if you find yourself staring at the screen, afraid to push that Call button. We've all been there!

WHAT TO EXPECT

The purpose of your first conversation isn't to prove to your language partner how great at Spanish you are. It's to learn, practise and gain confidence. Remember that these are your goals, and there is simply no way to fail at this. You'll have plenty of time to improve and perfect your skills in later conversations.

Remember that perfectionism is your enemy in language learning. If you guess right, the conversation will advance, and if you guess wrong, the earth won't open up and swallow you whole. In fact, you'll have had an opportunity to learn something new. That's what this is all about, after all.

The first conversation is always the most nerve-wracking. But it's a completely crucial first step towards becoming comfortable being a beginner Spanish learner. Beginners make mistakes. And as a beginner Spanish learner, you shouldn't expect yourself to know all (or most) of the words. You should expect the opposite.

During this conversation, don't focus on saying things perfectly. Focus on getting your point across. Being understood – communicating with another human being – is the main goal here. Don't stress about knowing all the grammar, using precisely the right word, or having a perfect accent.

Let's review some of the skills you've learned throughout this course. They'll come in handy in your first conversation!

- **Rephrasing** – Remember, you'll need to take many of the phrases you want to say, and rephrase them so that they're much more basic (but still convey the same idea). Rephrasing your thoughts into simpler forms is an essential skill for language hackers.
- **'Tarzan Spanish'** – Don't be afraid to speak in 'Tarzan Spanish'! If you know how to say something right, say it right. But if you know how to say something kind of wrong, then say it wrong! Your language partner will help you figure out the wording you need.
- **Learn from your gaps** – Despite rephrasing, you'll realize that there's still a lot you don't yet know how to say. And as you talk, you'll realize you've been pronouncing some words wrong. Your partner may correct you. Good! This is valuable information. Take note of the phrases you wish you knew. You can learn them in advance for next time.
- **When in doubt, guess!** – Finally, if you're not sure what your conversation partner just said, guess! Use context – facial expressions in the video feed and whatever words you do understand – to infer the meaning of the entire phrase.

Talking one-on-one with another person is the best language practice you can get. If there's one secret to #languagehacking, this is it. Enjoy your first conversation, and the many others to come!

COMPLETING UNIT 10

Check your understanding

One mission left to go!

Review the phrases and conversation strategies from the unit one more time. When you're feeling confident, listen to the audio rehearsal, which will help you practise your listening, pronunciation, and speaking skills.

1 Practise answering common questions.

🔊 **10.03** Listen to the audio rehearsal, which will ask questions in Spanish.

- 🔊 Practise answering the questions by giving spoken responses in Spanish that are true for you.
- 🔊 Pause or replay the audio as often as you need.

2 Practise listening to someone describe herself.

🔊 **10.04** In this audio rehearsal, a Spanish speaker talks casually about herself. Listen to the audio, and after each clip, use what you understand (or can infer) to answer questions about the speaker.

🕒 Notes:

🕒 🔊 What is her name? _____

🕒 🔊 Where is she from? _____

🕒 🔊 Where does she live now? _____

🕒 🔊 How long has she been teaching Spanish? _____

🕒 🔊 Does she speak any other languages? If so, which ones?

🕒 🔊 What are some of the things she is interested in?

CONVERSATION STRATEGY:

warm up before your first conversation!

Practising with audio is one of the best ways to prepare for a conversation. An hour or two before your Spanish conversation begins, come back to these exercises and replay them to help you get into the flow of Spanish.

This is exactly what you'll be doing in your first conversation - listening to your partner's end of the conversation and using a combination of your new #languagehacking skills, as well as context to help you even through the tricky parts.

Show what you know ...

Are you ready for your final mission? Before you move on, make sure that you:

- Write up the essential phrases you'll need into your cheat sheet.
- Write up survival phrases and add them to your cheat sheet.
- Prepare 2-5 'me-specific' phrases you want to practise. Add them to your cheat sheet.
- Prepare at least three questions you plan to ask. Add them to your cheat sheet.

Don't forget, you can always ask for the help you need ... whether it's learning new phrases, or improving your pronunciation, it's always OK to ask directly for the help you need!

My partner Lauren likes to set up a 'conversation bingo' for herself when she's practising a language online. She writes out a few phrases she wants to practise during the call (either by saying them or hearing them), and tries to cross off as many as she can.

WHAT ARE YOUR GOALS?

One more thing. It helps to know before you set up your first chat what you want to accomplish or what phrases you'd like to practise. Be realistic, but ambitious! And be flexible – you never know where a conversation will take you, and that's a very good thing for language learners.

Write out a few notes on what you want to practise during your first conversation, or create your own bingo sheet! Then, find your language partner.



COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

It's time to complete your mission: having a one-on-one conversation with a native ... online. To do this, you'll need to prepare to:

- ✦ say hello and use essential greeting vocabulary.
- ✦ say goodbye or set up a time to talk again.
- ✦ ask at least three questions.
- ✦ give your answers to commonly asked questions.
- ✦ use survival phrases when you can't understand or need help.

Please visit www.italki.com/languagehacking

STEP 1: find your conversation partner and schedule your first conversation

Follow our resource guide to find a conversation partner online and schedule your first chat with them now.

When you're setting up your first conversation online, the first thing to do is send out a few messages to the exchange partners or teachers who look like a good fit for you. Break the ice and send them a message (in Spanish of course!) to set up your first chat. A good icebreaker tells the other person:

- your name
- your language level
- what you'd like to practise or discuss during the conversation.

Example:

¡Hola! Me llamo Sarah. Quiero hablar español contigo. Quiero practicar frases simples. Por ejemplo, mi nombre y mi país. Soy principiante, así que ¡gracias por tu paciencia!

Be friendly, and give a short intro to yourself and what you want to practise – but don't say too much! Save some phrases for the conversation. Write out your own icebreaker now.

STEP 2: go all the way ... online

The first time might be scary, but it will get easier! So go online and have your first conversation in Spanish for an authentic and good time!

Here's what to do during your conversation:

- Practise rephrasing your thoughts into simple forms.
- Speak 'Tarzan Spanish' if you have to – it's better than nothing!
- Take note of any gaps in your Spanish vocabulary.
- Write down any phrases or words you want to say, but don't know yet.
- Write down new words or phrases you want to review later.

HACK IT: let time pressure be your motivator

Schedule it for tomorrow or the earliest possible slot. Don't give yourself a long window to get ready – overthinking this step can lead to procrastination later. Make a request for the next time slot, and don't look back!

Remember, your first conversation is just that – a first conversation. The only way to get to your 50th conversation is to get the first one out of the way, then keep going from there.

STEP 3: learn from other learners, and share your experience!

Tell the community how it went! (Or, if you're nervous, head over to see how other people's first conversations went.) **Your task is to ask or answer at least three questions from other learners:**

- Were you nervous? How did you handle your nerves?
- What was your teacher or exchange partner like?
- What went well, and what didn't? What would you do differently next time?

As for the words you didn't know - that's one major benefit of having one-on-one conversations! You learn very quickly where the gaps are in your script, so you can work on filling them.

STEP 4: reflect on what you've learned

After your first conversation, it's easy to focus on the words you didn't know or the things you couldn't say. But it's much more productive to focus on your successes instead. Were you 'only' able to give your name and your job, and say that you live with your cat? Those are huge wins! Don't overlook those achievements.

- What were your wins? What phrases could you say or understand?
- Review the notes you took during your conversation. What words did you need that you didn't know yet? What new words did you learn?

Or at least you should have!

HEY, LANGUAGE HACKER, YOU JUST HAD A CONVERSATION IN SPANISH!

You just broke one of the biggest barriers in language learning! Now that you've crossed that threshold, you are on a fast-track to fluency in Spanish that most people only ever dream about. Enjoy this milestone.

And remember - your second conversation will be even better than your first. Your third will be even better than that. Schedule your next spoken lesson now - don't put it off - that ticking clock is a powerful motivator for language hackers.

Your next mission: *¡Sigue así!* Keep it up!

ADDITIONAL AUDIO

 Alphabet

 Days

 Months

 Seasons

 Numbers 0-9

 Numbers 10-19

 Numbers 20-29

 Numbers 30-39

 Numbers 40-49

 Numbers 50-59

 Numbers 60-69

 Numbers 70-79

 Numbers 80-89

 Numbers 90-99

 Numbers 100-110

TRANSCRIPTS

01.10

- A Hola, soy Pablo, ¿y tú?
- B Soy español, ¿y tú?
- C Soy arquitecto, ¿y tú?
- D Vivo en Barcelona ahora, ¿y tú?
- E ¿Te gusta hablar español?
- F ¿Por qué aprendes español?
- G ¿Te gusta el café?

02.03

- A En Madrid.
- B ¿Aquí?
- C Tomás vive aquí.
- D Hablas español.
- E ¿Hablas español?
- F ¿Sarah vive aquí?
- G ¿Felipe habla bien portugués?
- H Felipe habla bien portugués.

02.11

- A Hola, ¿eres español?
- B Soy Alfonso y soy español. ¿Desde cuándo aprendes español?
- C ¡Hablas muy bien! Yo no hablo bien inglés, pero quiero aprender más. Soy dentista y trabajo en Valencia. ¿Tú estudias o trabajas?
- D Quiero aprender italiano porque es muy fácil. Y tú, ¿qué otros idiomas quieres aprender?
- E ¡Quiero una experiencia Hollywood! ¿Prefieres ver la televisión o ir al cine?
- F ¿Crees que hablas más español esta semana?
- G Bueno, ahora, ¿qué quieres saber de mí?

03.09

Hola. Soy Estefania. ¡Encantada! Uy... lo siento, pero no entiendo. Más lento... Hmm... Tengo problema con mi ordenador. Es viejo. Pero no pasa nada. ¿Puedo llamarte mañana? ¡Hasta luego!

04.10

- A Amigo, ¿te importa si hablamos?
- B ¿Qué vas a hacer este fin de semana?
- C ¿Por qué? Yo voy al teatro para ver a Andrea.
- D ¿Cómo vas? Tengo que tomar el tren para ir al teatro.
- E Después del teatro, quiero ir a una fiesta. ¿Ya sabes dónde hay una fiesta, o todavía no lo sabes?

05.08

- A ¿Cómo se llaman tus primos?
Jorge y María.
- B ¿Qué trabajo hace tu mamá?
Es recepcionista.
- C ¿Cuántos años tiene tu novio?
Treinta.
- D ¿Dónde viven tus hermanos?
En Murcia
- E ¿Tu mejor amigo tiene gatos?
¡Sí!

06.09

- A La verdad es que el chino es un idioma complicado.
- B Viajar es muy caro, aunque es lo mejor que uno puede hacer en la vida.
- C No tengo ni idea de lo que dice. Habla muy rápido.
- D En general me gusta más el español que el alemán.
- E Menos mal que estás tú conmigo. Eres una muy buena amiga.
- F Por desgracia no puedo ir a tu fiesta de cumpleaños. Ese día estoy en Inglaterra.

06.10

- A Tengo hambre.
Quiere agua.
- B No puedo pasar el día en casa.
Hay que salir.
- C En mi opinión, Roma es mejor que Madrid.
Ella prefiere Madrid.
- D Mi prima lee cada día.
Ella lee a menudo.
- E ¿Crees que la arquitectura española es bonita?
Parece bonita, ¡sí!
No están de acuerdo.

07.07

Esta mañana he conocido a un turista en la ciudad, Mark. Él ha visto Barcelona hace un mes, pero no ha visto Madrid. Es simpático, así que lo he acompañado a ver la ciudad. Hemos visto la Gran Vía, el parque del Retiro, el templo de Debod y hemos visitado el Prado. Mark me ha dado las gracias y ha ido a Valencia, su próxima ciudad.

07.08

- A ¿A quién ha conocido esta mañana?
- B ¿Qué ciudad ha visto Mark hace un mes?
- C ¿Qué han visto en la ciudad?
- D ¿A dónde ha ido Mark al final?

08.07

Me encanta leer. En particular, me gustan las novelas de ciencia ficción y las autobiografías. Leo muy a menudo, casi todos los días. A veces leo antes de cenar, pero suelo hacerlo antes de ir a la cama. Podría leer todo el día.

08.08

- A ¿Cuál es su pasión?
- B ¿Qué tipo de temas le gustan?
- C ¿Con qué frecuencia lee?
- D ¿Cuándo suele leer?
- E ¿Qué le gustaría hacer todo el día?

09.05

- A atractivo
- B atento
- C creativo
- D curioso
- E honesto
- F inteligente
- G sincero
- H tolerante
- I ignorante
- J impaciente

09.08

Me llamo Lauren y vivo en Seattle. Aunque hay mucha gente aquí, no estoy lejos de la naturaleza. Cuando quiero, puedo visitar la montaña Rainier. Mi amigo vive cerca de un río allí, donde la vista es impresionante. Por desgracia, hoy está lloviendo. ¡No me gusta!

09.09

- A ¿Vive lejos de la naturaleza Lauren?
- B ¿Quién vive cerca de un río?
- C ¿Cómo es el paisaje allí?
- D ¿Cómo es el tiempo allí?
- E ¿Lauren está feliz con ese tiempo?

10.03

- A ¿Cómo te llamas?
- B ¿De dónde eres?
- C ¿Dónde vives?
- D ¿Por qué quieres aprender español?
- E ¿Qué te gusta?
- F ¡Háblame de tu mejor amigo o amiga!

10.04

Hola, ¿qué tal? Me llamo Sara. Soy de Guatemala, pero ahora vivo en Buenos Aires. Soy profesora de castellano y comencé hace tres años en esta escuela. Hablo un poquito de francés y portugués. Me encanta viajar y leer.

ANSWER KEY

UNIT 1

CONVERSATION 1

Figure it out 1 I am. 2 Hola, ¿Qué tal? 3 ¿Y tú? 4 a. Artista b. Estados Unidos c. Madrid

Notice 1 muy 2 an 3 ¡Háblame ...! 4 a. Soy b. Vivo en c. ¿Y tú? d. Soy de España.

Practice 1 Examples: Japón, Alemania, Francia (countries); japonés, alemán, francés (nationalities); ingeniero, profesor, traductor (professions); fútbol, pescar, baloncesto (interests).
2 a. Soy de ... b. Soy ... c. Vivo en ...

Put it together Examples: Soy Richard. Soy de Inglaterra. Vivo en Londres. Soy profesor.

CONVERSATION 2

Figure it out 1 ¿Qué te gusta? 2 a. but, b. to visit 3 no me gusta 4 me gusta; me encanta 5 a. música b. clásica c. museos d. fútbol

Notice 1 Spanish literally translates to: 'it pleases me' or 'to-me it-pleases' (me gusta), and 'it enchants me' or 'to-me it-enchants' (me encanta). 2 no me encanta

Your turn: use the hack 2 Madrid, profesor (teacher/professor), pizza, pasta, música clásica (classical music), chocolate, visitar (to visit), museos (museums), fútbol (football),

Grammar explanation: verb + noun a. Example: Me encanta Madrid. b. Example: No me gusta el café. c. Example: Me gusta la pizza.

Put it together Examples: Me encanta viajar. Me gusta la pizza en Italia. Me gusta el fútbol en Inglaterra. No me gusta la pasta en Brasil. No me gusta la televisión.

CONVERSATION 3

Figure it out 1 Why? = ¿Por qué?; because = porque 2 a. Spanish culture b. classical music or pop music 3 Examples: la cultura, la música, interesante 4 Aprendo is the yo (I) form. Aprendes is the tú (you) form.

Conversation strategy 1 a. y b. porque c. pero d. o 2 a. España es interesante b. La cultura es diferente aquí. 3 a. aprendo b. quiero c. creo d. vivo 4 The subject is yo (I). 5 hablar, entender, vivir, trabajar

Practice 1 a. Me encanta hablar español b. Odio visitar museos c. Me gusta aprender idiomas d. Quiero visitar España. 2 a. Example: Me gusta la pasta y me gusta la paella. b. Example: Me gusta el tenis, pero no me gusta el fútbol. c. Example: Me gusta viajar, pero no me gusta leer. d. Example: Me gusta España porque me encanta aprender español.

Put it together Example: Quiero aprender español porque viajo a España pronto. Leo mucho y quiero leer en otro idioma.

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

Build your script Example: Soy Richard y soy estudiante. Soy inglés y vivo en España, en Madrid. Visito España porque me encanta la cultura y porque estudio en la Universidad aquí. Aprendo español porque me gusta mucho hablar idiomas.

UNIT 2

CONVERSATION 1

Figure it out 1 a. dos (two) b. sí c. no 2 a. falso b. verdadero c. falso 3 sí, de verdad 4 You add 'no' at the beginning. The word is 'no'. 5 a. ¿No quieres? b. ¿No vives?

Notice 1 Hablo bien portugués. Hablo un poco de ruso. 2 a. Solo quiero hablar español. b. Solo me gusta el español.

Pronunciation a. en Madrid. b. ¿Aquí? c. respuesta d. respuesta e. pregunta f. pregunta g. pregunta h. respuesta

Grammar explanation: answering yes/no questions

a. Sí, como pescado. No, no como pescado. b. Sí, trabajo en el hospital. No, no trabajo en el hospital. c. Sí, quiero venir a la fiesta. No, no quiero venir a la fiesta.

Practice 1 a. ¿Vives en Madrid? b. ¿Hablas portugués? c. ¿Aprendo español? 2 a. No, no me gusta. b. No, no prefiero la música pop c. No, no hablo ruso. 3 a. Solo b. Aprendo un poco de c. mucho, ¡por supuesto! d. De verdad, no, portugués e. Hoy, estudio

Put it together 1 a. Alemán b. Francés c. Chino d. Example: Italiano e. Example: Ruso 2 a. Example: Sí, hablo bien italiano y alemán y un poco de chino. No, no hablo otros idiomas. Solo hablo inglés. b. Example: Sí, quiero aprender ruso. No, no quiero aprender otros idiomas.

CONVERSATION 2

Figure it out 1 a. dos semanas b. 3 tres idiomas: inglés, japonés, y árabe c. Japonés – porque me gusta la cultura japonesa 2 a. solo b. ¡Hablas español muy bien! c. verdad 3 especialmente – especially; fácil – easy 4 a. de nada b. desde cuándo c. ¿Cuántos ...?

Notice 1 desde cuándo, 'when' 2 a. español desde hace dos semanas b. aprender inglés, japonés y árabe 3 a. es verdad b. la cultura es interesante 4 a. Cuántos b. desde c. idiomas d. Desde cuándo

Practice 1 Cuántos, aquí 2 a. cinco días b. tres años c. ocho meses d. cuatro semanas e. Vivo en España desde mi cumpleaños. f. Aprendo español desde hace nueve semanas.

Put it together Example: Mi número es seis cinco nueve dos cuatro cinco siete cero cinco (659 245 705). 3 a. ¿Desde cuándo vives en España? b. ¿Desde cuándo enseñas español? 4. Example: Aprendo español desde que hace 7 semanas.

CONVERSATION 3

Figure it out 1 What are you doing? 2 cada semana, cada día 3 a. cada semana b. cada día 4 a. vocabulario, interesante, clase b. es verdad, es fácil, es una mala idea 5 a. verdadero b. falso c. verdadero d. falso

Notice 1 a. ¿Cómo ...? b. pues... c. bueno... d. a ver... 2 a. creo que b. prefiero c. ¡Eso ayuda! d. debo

Practice 1 escribo – escribes, estudio – estudias, trabajo – trabajas, creo – crees, leo – lees, decido – decides 2 a. Vives b. Espero c. Estudio d. Practico e. Lees 3 a. vivir b. Leo, libro c. Trabajo, día d. Prefiero, todas, semanas e. Creo, estudias 4 a. Prefiero hablar español. b. Debes comer aquí. c. Sabes que aprendo español desde hace dos semanas. d. ¡Creo que el español es fácil!

Put it together Examples: Aprendo portugués. Espero viajar a Finlandia. Debo estudiar más. Creo que hablo bien español.

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

Build your script ¿Desde cuándo vives aquí? ¿Qué te gusta hacer el fin de semana? Aprendo español desde el año pasado. Hablo muy bien alemán e italiano y ahora también un poco de español. Para aprender español, voy a clase y practico con muchos amigos de España. En el futuro espero aprender francés y luego chino.

UNIT 3

CONVERSATION 1

Figure it out 1 a. más lento por favor b. ¡Muchas gracias por enseñarme español! c. ¿Dónde estás hoy? 2 a. muchas gracias b. de nada c. por favor 3 a. no problem b. What's your name? 4 Where are you?

Notice 1 Más lento, por favor. 2 a. Mucho gusto. b. ¡Estoy muy bien! c. Ahora estoy en Londres. 3 a. I am b. you have c. you are d. I am (My name's) 4 a. ¿Cómo estás? b. ¿Dónde estás? c. ahora d. hoy

Grammar explanation: soy vs. estoy 1 a. Estoy b. Eres c. Estoy d. Eres 2 a. Soy escritor. b. No, soy argentino. c. No puedo. ¡Estoy muy cansado! d. ¡Estoy en el parque!

Practice 1 a. 5 b. 3 c. 4 d. 1 e. 6 f. 2

Grammar explanation: word order with objects

1 a. Te doy la medicina. b. ¿Lo ves? c. ¿Puedes ayudarme ahora? 2 a. enseñarme b. hablarme c. decirte 3 quiero enviarlo, te llamo, no lo como, decirme, ayudarte, darte, enviarlo, escribirte, llamarte, no comerlo 4 a. No puedo llamarte. b. No quiero visitarte. c. Debo ponerlo aquí. d. ¿Puedes oírme?

Put it together Example: Soy profesor. Soy estadounidense. Soy simpático. Estoy en Nueva York. Estoy muy bien.

CONVERSATION 2

Figure it out 1 a. verdadero b. falso, Sarah says she is in Madrid to learn Spanish. c. falso, Antonio lives in Valencia. 2 a. interesting b. repeat c. reason d. serious e. other f. moment 3 a. Do you live in another city? b. Can you repeat (that)? c. I can't hear you well.

Notice 1 a. vivo, vives b. estoy, estás c. puedo d. dices, llamas e. trabajo, entiendo

Conversation strategy: survival phrases 1 a. ¿Puedes ayudarme? b. ¿Puedes hablar más lento? 2 ¿Más lento por favor? Lo siento. No entiendo. ¿Puedes repetir (eso)? Un momento. No puedo oírte bien.

Practice 1 a. ¡Ayúdame, por favor! b. ¡Habla español, por favor! c. ¡Mírame! d. ¡Ven aquí! 2 a. ¿Dónde vives? b. ¿Qué dices? c. ¿En qué otra ciudad quieres vivir? d. ¿Por qué dices que quieres trabajar en Madrid? e. Entiendo que trabajas 3 Why? ¿Por qué? – What? ¿Qué? – Where? ¿Dónde? – When? ¿Cuándo? – How many? ¿Cuántos? 4 a. ¿Cuándo? b. ¿Cuántos? c. ¿Quién? d. ¿Dónde? e. ¿Por qué?

Put it together Example: Soy estadounidense, pero vivo en Londres ahora. Vivo en Londres desde hace 5 meses. Trabajo en una escuela como profesor. Trabajo aquí desde septiembre.

CONVERSATION 3

Figure it out 1 a. deactivate b. restart c. connection d. wifi e. internet 2 a. verdadero b. verdadero c. falso, The problem is with Sarah's computer. d. verdadero 3 a. lo siento b. no pasa nada c. necesito d. no es mi e. ya sabes f. está bien g. hasta luego, hasta la próxima 4 reiniciar(lo), oírme, llámame 5 my

Conversation strategy 1: use 'Tarzan Spanish' 1 a. ¿Más despacio? b. Esto, ¿cuánto? c. Supermercado, ¿dónde?

Conversation strategy 2: memorize the power nouns 1 a. lugar de libros b. persona de restaurante

Notice 1 a. Tengo b. Crees c. Puedo d. Puedo, oírme e. llamo 2 No pasa nada 3 No recuerdo la palabra

Practice 1 a. Tengo un portátil b. Tienes otro ordenador c. Creo que sabes d. Crees que puedo e. Puedo decir f. Puedes llamar g. Necesito otro ordenador h. Necesito trabajar i. Necesitas poder j. Necesito tener k. Necesitas ser 2 a. Necesitas, ordenador b. Si quieres, puedo ayudarte, no pasa nada c. Puedo oírte, ¿Puedes repetirlo? d. No, dónde está e. Creo, verte

Your turn: use the hack 1 a. la universidad b. el capitalismo c. el teatro d. el teléfono e. la ciudad f. el apartamento g. la paz h. el ordenador i. la comedia j. la diferencia k. la religión l. la casa m. la fiesta n. el poema o. la acción p. el problema 2 Masculinidad ends in -DAD (a feminine word ending), feminismo ends in -O (a male ending).

Put it together Example: Necesito un ordenador. Me gustaría tener un smartphone. Creo que mi tablet no funciona.

UNIT 4

CONVERSATION 1

Figure it out 1 a. verdadero b. falso, Sara quiere hablar español con Julia. c. falso, Sara no piensa que Julia tiene mucha paciencia. 2 Juntas means together. If the speaker is male, it's juntos. 3 a. Soy de Colombia. b. ¿Hablas español? c. ¿Te importa si hablamos español juntas? d. Necesito practicar mucho más español e. ¡Vamos a hablar! 4 ¿Hablas español? ¿Te importa si hablamos español juntas? 5 divertido – fun, paciente – patient, principiante – beginner 6 a. ¡Guay! b. Va a ser divertido! c. ¿Por qué no? d. ¡No hay problema!

Notice 1 ¿Te importa si ...? 2 Puedes sentarte. 3 a. muchas b. mucho c. muchos d. mucho 4 a. Solo hablo inglés. b. Aún como la paella. c. Ya estoy en casa. d. Aún estudias el libro.

Grammar explanation: ¿hablamos? 1 a. Pasamos b. Creemos c. Venimos d. vivimos e. comemos 2 a. Pedro y yo vamos a la playa. b. ¡Vamos, Marta! c. ¡Vamos a tu casa!

Put it together 1 Examples: ¿Te importa si hablo contigo? / ¿Te importa si toco tu perro? / ¿Te importa si me siento aquí? / ¿Te importa si entro? 2 Examples: Situation 1: Hola, me llamo Jack. Sí, hablo un poco de español, pero aún soy principiante. Yo soy inglés y aprendo español solo desde el año pasado ¿Tú de dónde eres? Situation 2: Aprendo español porque creo que el idioma es muy bonito. Me gusta mucho y un día espero ir a España, tener amigos españoles, comer paella y bailar salsa. Situation 3: Perdón, ¿te importa si pregunto algo? ¿Sabes dónde está el banco?

CONVERSATION 2

Figure it out 1 a. Barcelona b. Valencia y Murcia c. tiempo 2 a. ¿Desde hace cuánto tiempo estás en Madrid? b. desde hace unos meses 3 feminine; it ends in -dad. 4 a. spend the weekend b. next weekend c. for sure! 5 a. 4 b. 3 c. 1 d. 6 e. 5 f. 2 g. 7

Notice 1 a. unas ciudades b. no hay tiempo c. ¡Hay algunos amigos que quiero ver! 2 a. el fin de semana b. este finde c. el próximo finde d. el fin de semana pasado 3 a. Debes visitar b. Quiero decir... c. ¿Quieres decir...? 4 a. 4 b. 5 c. 1 d. 6 e. 3 f. 7 g. 2 5 a. Debes tomar el tren el próximo fin de semana. b. Me gusta pasar tiempo en Toledo. c. ¿Viajas mucho? d. Vamos a ver el Alcázar mañana. e. Quiero visitar Colombia. f. Tomo un taxi en la ciudad.

Grammar explanation: para a. para b. blank c. para d. blank

Practice 1 a. Debes visitar, para ver, la ciudad b. ir en coche c. ir, como, y d. Para ir, debes e. ir en avión, o, ir en tren f. ir en bicicleta, hay 2 a. Tomo el tren. b. Voy en coche. c. ¿Tomamos un taxi? d. Vas en avión. 3 Examples: a. Cuando voy a España, voy a hacer muchísimas cosas: voy a hablar español... b. Me gustaría visitar a mi hermana para saber cómo está. c. Creo que vamos a

tomar el tren. **d.** Quiero ver la arquitectura, visitar los museos e ir a los restaurantes ... **e.** y mucho más. **f.** ¡Sé que va a ser muy divertido!

Put it together Examples: **1 a.** Viajo bastante, pero me gustaría viajar más. **b.** Voy a Bruselas. **c.** Voy por dos semanas. **d.** Voy el mes que viene. **e.** Voy en avión.

CONVERSATION 3

Figure it out **1 a.** verdadero **b.** verdadero **c.** verdadero **d.** falso, Sarah wants to go to the Rambla to see the market. **e.** falso, Julia thinks she is free next week, but she doesn't know yet. **f.** falso, Julia is going to call Sarah on Monday. **2 a.** Para ver el Mercado de la Boquería. **b.** Para comer en el lugar favorito de Dalí. **3 a.** here is my number **b.** Dalí's favourite place **c.** you will be busy **4 a.** ¿Qué vas a hacer en Barcelona? **b.** Quiero hacer eso también.

Notice **1 a.** primero **b.** después **c.** luego **2 a.** voy a ver **b.** vas a ... **c.** vas a ver **d.** eres **3 a.** Aquí tienes mi número. Aquí tienes mi dirección de email. **b.** ¿Puedes darme tu número (de teléfono)? ¿Puedes darme tu dirección de email?

Practice **1 a.** Voy a darte mi número. **b.** Mañana, voy a estar ocupado, ¡pero estoy libre este finde! **c.** No puedo verlo aún ... espero ... ¡aquí está! **d.** Si no puedo ir, ¿qué voy a hacer? **e.** Voy a la cafetería para ver a todo el mundo. ¿Quieres venir conmigo? **f.** ¿Te importa si tomamos el autobús juntos? **2 a.** **3 b.** **1 c.** **2 d.** **6 e.** **5 f.** **4 3 a.** Quiero viajar a México. **b.** ¿Dónde debo pasar mi tiempo? **c.** ¿Aún no lo sabes? **d.** No... ¿Crees que puedes ayudarme? **e.** ¡Claro! Primero, puedes sentarte conmigo. **f.** ¡Vamos a comer y voy a decirte donde está mi lugar favorito!

Your turn: use the hack **1 a.** ¡Voy a estar ocupado! **b.** Voy a hacer mucho. **c.** ¿Vas a llamarme mañana? **d.** ¿Vas a comer conmigo? **e.** No voy a viajar a Bogotá. **2 a.** Voy a trabajar **b.** Puedo decir **c.** Me gusta beber **3 a.** No estás muy ocupado. **b.** Vas a estar muy ocupado. **c.** Vas a hablar español. **d.** Vamos a viajar a Madrid. **e.** Pablo va a Irlanda. **f.** Sarah no va a visitar Berlín.

Put it together **1** Example: Primero, voy a visitar la ciudad. Entonces, voy a ver a mi amiga María. Voy a visitar con ella los museos. Para comer voy a ir a su casa y a los restaurantes. Quiero ver lo más importante y sacar fotos bonitas. **2** Example: Aquí tienes mi número de teléfono y mi dirección de correo electrónico. ¿Puedes enviarme un SMS o llamarme mañana?

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

Build your script Voy a ir a Italia. Voy a visitar el Coliseo, el Vaticano y los Museos Vaticanos, voy a comer pizza, pasta y helados. El primer lugar que quiero ver es Piazza di Spagna. Quiero ir en septiembre porque tengo 10 días de vacaciones. Voy a ir en avión y voy a tomar el metro para llegar a todas partes. No voy a viajar solo. Me van a acompañar mis padres y mi tío.

UNIT 5

CONVERSATION 1

Figure it out 1 Who is she? What is her name? 2 a. falso, Sarah is Maria's favourite student. b. verdadero c. falso, Julia works as an engineer. d. falso, Julia is in Madrid for one month. e. verdadero 3 a. este b. próximo c. mañana d. después e. cada año 4 a. ¿cómo te va? b. ¿quién? c. mi estudiante favorita d. de hecho e. cada año f. me alegro de

Notice 1 a. Me alegro de verte. b. Me alegro de estar aquí. c. Me alegro de decirlo. 2 te va, se llama, es, trabaja, pasa, le encanta 3 a. él es b. ella es c. Mañana vamos d. Visitamos 4 a. paso tiempo b. planeamos c. vamos a pasar el finde 5 a. gasto b. pasar c. pasa d. gastar e. paso 6 a. La llamo cada día. b. Voy a verla esta noche.

Grammar explanation: él (he) and ella (she) forms a. Quiere b. visita c. habla d. Trabaja e. baila

Practice 1 Examples: prometido (fiancé), cuñado (brother-in-law), suegra (mother-in-law), nieta (granddaughter) 2 a. hermanos b. Está c. mamá, como, Trabaja d. pasar tiempo, hijos e. mi hermano, lo veo f. Mi familia, pasamos, juntos g. planea trabajar h. Mi novia, todos los días, Le 3 a. Example: Mi mejor amigo se llama Mark. b. Example: Vive aquí en Londres, en mi calle. c. Example: Mi mejor amigo no trabaja, es estudiante como yo. 5 a. Mi prima vive en un apartamento cerca de su universidad. b. Mi novio es taxista. c. Mi mejor amiga lee mucho.

Put it together Example: Mi persona favorita es mi mejor amiga y se llama Rebecca. Vive en mi ciudad, en Washington, con sus padres. No trabaja aún, pero quiere ser informática.

CONVERSATION 2

Figure it out 1 a. ¿Estás casad@? b. como tú c. estoy solter@ 2 a. mucho tiempo b. (la) casa de Juan c. Está soltera. d. No le gustan. 3 feminine because it ends in an 'a'

Notice 1 conoce, tiene, rompe, es 2 El perro/perrito de mi hermano. El amigo de mi padre. 3 a. ¿De dónde vienes? b. ¿Con qué escribes? c. ¿A qué hora comienza la clase?

Vocab explanation: saber and conocer (to know) 1 a. Conozco b. Sabes c. Conocemos d. Sabe

Your turn: use the hack 1 a. Vuelo b. Cerramos c. Prefieres 2 a. Tienes muchos libros. b. Doy el dinero a Marta. c. Digo algo raro cada día.

Practice 1 a. Example: Sí, tengo novio. b. Example: No, no tengo hijos. c. Example: Vivo con mi novio. 2 a. ¿Quieres decir ...? b. Quiere decir... c. Ella quiere decir... 4 a. Conozco, amigo, Nos parecemos mucho b. de mi madre

Put it together Example: Conozco a mi novia desde primaria. Estamos juntos desde hace 25 años, pero estamos casados desde hace 15. Planeamos ir a Marruecos el año que viene.

CONVERSATION 3

Figure it out 1 a. Four – Somos cuatro. b. She isn't sure – No estoy segura. c. No parecen tu tipo. 2 a. We have two children. b. How do you say in Spanish ...? c. Spanish men 3 a. se llaman
b. no parecen
c. nunca se sabe

Grammar explanation: ellos/ellas (they) 1 a. adoran b. están c. trabajan d. viven
e. quieren f. hablan g. comen h. esperan i. viajan

Practice

1 dictionary form: querer, ser, ir, conocer, decir

yo: quiero, soy, voy, conozco, digo

tú: quieres, eres, vas, conoces, dices

él/ella: quiere, es, va, conoce, dice

nosotros: queremos, somos, vamos, conocemos, decimos

ellos: quieren, son, van, conocen, dicen

2 ¡Estoy segur@!

3 a. 4 b. 5 c. 1 d. 3 e. 2 f. 6

4 a. es b. están c. va d. van

Put it together Example: En mi familia somos 3 y vivimos en Manchester. Mis padres se llaman Jack y Claire. Él tiene 56 años y ella, 51. Mi papá es profesor y mi mamá es recepcionista. Tengo 6 buenos amigos desde la universidad y trabajamos juntos en una empresa de informática. No tengo perro y pero creo que mi novia y yo vamos a tener gatos juntos.

COMPLETING UNIT 5

Sus primos se llaman Jorge y María. Su mamá es recepcionista. Su novio tiene treinta años. Sus hermanos viven en Murcia. Sí – su mejor amigo tiene gatos.

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

Build your script La persona más importante en mi vida es mi novia. Ella es muy importante para mí porque me ayuda cada día. Mi novia es una persona muy determinada, optimista y muy

simpática. Conozco a mi novia desde hace 7 años y estamos juntos desde hace 6 años. Mi novia es profesora y trabaja en la universidad. Es una persona muy especial.

UNIT 6

CONVERSATION 1

Figure it out 1 a. Patatas bravas. Sangría. b. tienen, saben, puede 2 We know already. 3 a. Para mí, unas patatas bravas. b. Yo voy a tomar gazpacho. c. Una cola para mí. 4 a. ¿Y para beber? b. ¿Vas a beber algo?

Notice 1 The literal Spanish translation is 'I-have hunger', not 'I'm hungry'. 2 to take 3 a. Queremos una botella de agua. b. ¿Puede ponerme una sangría? 4 a. Voy a tomar b. Queremos c. Para mí d. ¿Puede ponerme ...? 5 a. 7 b. 2 c. 4 d. 6 e. 1 f. 3 g. 5

Practice 1 a. comer b. beber c. comprar 2 a. van a beber b. botella de agua c. voy a tomar, ella va a tomar d. Sabemos, queremos e. ya, hambre 3 Examples: (food) arroz y frijoles, paella, gazpacho y patatas con alioli (phrases) ¿Qué me recomienda de segundo plato? ¿Puede traerme la cuenta?

Put it together 1 Examples: Sí, para mí un gazpacho. Un arroz negro, por favor. Para beber, agua y vino tinto, gracias. ¿Puede venir? Sí, ya sabemos el postre. Para mí, un arroz con leche, por favor. 2 Example: Vamos a comer una tortilla de patatas. Vamos a beber vino tinto. Normalmente cocino en casa entre semana y ceno fuera en un restaurante los fines de semana.

CONVERSATION 2

Figure it out 1 a. Sarah wants to visit the Sagrada Familia. Julia wants to go to the beach. b. Julia thinks it's ugly. Sarah thinks it's beautiful. c. Vamos a hacer un trato. 2 a. hay demasiados turistas b. hay menos gente c. hay menos turistas 3 a. Tenemos que ver el mar Mediterráneo. b. Porque la playa es más relajante. 4 a. claro que... b. No estoy de acuerdo c. ¡Suenan bien! d. Hay tantos ... 5 a. better than b. less/fewer c. the most

Notice 1 You have reason, tengo hambre (I'm hungry) 2 a. el más feo b. mejor c. menos d. más e. demasiados f. muchos 3 a. sé que b. sabes que hay c. necesitamos d. necesitamos tantos e. necesito demasiados 4 a. 3 b. 4 c. 2 d. 1 e. 6 f. 5

Grammar explanation: comparisons 1 a. más simpáticos b. más libros c. más famoso d. más joven e. menos cara f. menos turistas

Practice 1 a. ¿Solo hay tres estudiantes aquí? b. Hay unos libros en mi casa. c. Creo que hay menos perros en el parque hoy. 2 a. Barcelona es más grande que La Rioja. b. Hay menos gente aquí que en tu casa. c. Creo que este restaurante es demasiado pequeño. d. Durante la semana hay que trabajar. (Also tienes que)

Put it together 1 Example: He comenzado este mes a estudiar español. He practicado con mi profesor cada día y me ha dicho que aprendo rápido! Esta semana he aprendido como hablar del pasado.

CONVERSATION 3

Figure it out 1 a. La música de Joaquín Sabina. b. La música moderna. c. Unas canciones.
2 a. some songs b. a good question c. you are going to love it 3 a. ¿Qué me recomiendas?
b. ¿Dónde está el camarero? c. ¡La cuenta, por favor! 4 a. en mi opinión b. me gusta más que ...
c. ¿Qué me recomiendas? d. me gustaría e. voy a darte f. puedes recomendarme

Notice 1 a. te va a encantar b. Me gusta más que... c. ¿Quieres pedirla? d. Acabo de hablar ...
2 a. 4 b. 1 c. 5 d. 2 e. 3 3 a. ¿Qué me recomiendas? b. Puedes recomendarme...
c. Dime ...

Practice 1 a. agua, la cuenta, más tiempo, otra bebida b. Example: Me gustaría aprender algo más sobre la historia de Argentina. 2 a. Me encanta, arquitectura, De hecho, más que, arquitectura
b. En tu opinión, es más c. debo darte mi d. más, música, o la

Your turn: use the hack 2 a. La verdad es que... b. aunque... c. No tengo ni idea...
d. En general... e. Menos mal... f. Por desgracia... 3 Examples: a. La verdad es que está todo delicioso. ¿Me pasas la receta de este postre? b. Vivo en Granada, en una casa, francamente, demasiado pequeña. c. Pienso que no necesito nada, pero muchas gracias por preguntar.
d. Por desgracia no me gusta, por eso estoy siempre cansado por la tarde.

Put it together Mi museo favorito de Madrid es el Reina Sofía. En mi opinión, es mucho mejor que el Prado, que, por cierto, me parece aburrido. Mi cuadro favorito del Reina Sofía es de Dalí. Me gustaría aprender más sobre su vida. Es más interesante que la de Boticelli, ¿no crees?

COMPLETING UNIT 6

a. falso b. verdadero c. falso d. verdadero e. falso

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

Build your script Mañana quiero ir a comer a mi restaurante favorito de Valencia. En mi opinión, hace la mejor paella valenciana de toda España, que solo lleva carne y verdura, ¡nunca marisco! Otros platos que recomiendo son el jamón ibérico y la tortilla española. Me gustan porque son platos tradicionales y muy sanos también. Creo que los platos son bastante más grandes que en los otros restaurantes de Valencia, ¿sabes? También es verdad que son un poco más caros, pero pienso que está todo muy rico. Tienen muchos tipos de bebidas, pero la cerveza es más barata que el vino. ¿Qué postre español me aconsejas entre el arroz con leche, la crema catalana y las torrijas?

UNIT 7

CONVERSATION 1

Figure it out 1 a. este fin de semana b. Hablamos de nuestros planes c. ¿Qué hay de nuevo? 3 discovered 4 a. falso b. falso c. verdadero d. verdadero

Notice 1 a. la semana pasada b. pasad@ c. ayer 2 a. ¿Qué has hecho? b. me divertí c. visitamos d. hablamos e. cenamos

Practice 1 a. He comido b. He estudiado c. He jugado d. He vivido 2 a. He viajado b. Han trabajado c. has visto d. Hemos comido e. ha bebido 3. He tomado

Put it together 1 Example: He ido a trabajar todos los días, como siempre, pero he ido al gimnasio 3 veces. Además, he empezado una dieta porque he decidido que tengo que perder 5 kg. He hablado con el médico y me lo ha aconsejado. 2 Example: Nunca he ido a Australia, pero planeo ir pronto. Siempre he hablado con mi papá de mis planes futuros. Siempre ha dicho que soy una persona muy responsable. Nunca hemos comido en tu casa. ¿Cuándo nos invitas?

CONVERSATION 2

Figure it out 1 a. verdadero b. falso c. falso 2 a. Ha practicado unas frases/She practised some phrases b. Hace solo unos meses/Only a few months ago c. I forgot! 3 has tenido, he estudiado, he aprendido, he practicado, he dicho, comenzaste, he comenzado, decidí, compré, volé, olvidé 4 tengo que decir 5 a. Did you have/Have you had time to...? b. I (have) learned some new words. c. I (have) started only some months ago.

Notice 1 a. ¿Has tenido tiempo de ...? b. Tengo que decir que... c. ¿Has tenido ...? 2 a. decidí b. comenzaste c. me olvidé 3 has tenido, he estudiado, he aprendido, he practicado has hecho, he dicho, has dicho, comenzaste, he comenzado, decidí, compré, volé, olvidé 4 a. I flew b. I took c. I have decided d. Has, visited

Put it together En mis clases de español de hace dos años el profesor explica solo la gramática y yo no sé hablar. Pero ahora practico con los españoles y hablo bastante bien. Después de clase voy a comer junto con mis compañeros y vuelvo a pie, pero ahora vivo lejos y tengo que ir en coche. Jugamos mucho al fútbol juntos, pero este año trabajo y no tengo tiempo.

CONVERSATION 3

Figure it out 1 a. pronunciación b. acento c. gramática 2 a. verdadero b. falso c. falso

Notice 1 a. Es mejor aprender cada día. b. Olvidé tu nombre. c. Aprendí español ese año. 2 a. 5 b. 4 c. 1 d. 6 e. 2 f. 3 3 a. visto nada b. nadie aquí c. comido paella nunca

Vocab explanation 1 a. he estudiado b. vamos a viajar/viajamos c. voy a leer d. practicamos/hemos practicado e. han comido f. ha visitado

Practice 1 a. las dos palabras b. Hablas, quiere decir c. Has entendido d. Cómo, pronunciación, He dicho, palabra e. otra palabra f. He visitado, he aprendido g. He practicado, gramática h. He escrito, frases, decirme i. has ayudado 2 a. ¡No me ayudas nunca! b. No ha dicho nada. c. No conozco (a) nadie aquí.

Your turn: use the hack 1 a. he tomado b. he viajado c. he preparado 2 busco, encuentro 3 Example: a. La semana pasada he ido al concierto de Enrique Iglesias. b. El sábado pasado he ido a cenar con mi amiga Luisa. c. Hace dos años he iniciado la universidad. d. Ayer he estudiado español con mi profesor.

Put it together Hace algunos días he visto a Lucas. Hace 5 años que no lo he visto, pero he hablado con él en Facebook. Le he dicho que he estudiado español y ese día le he enseñado qué sé decir. Se ha sorprendido mucho y yo me he sentido muy orgulloso.

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

Build your script Estudio español desde hace dos meses. Hace dos semanas he tenido un momento muy divertido en clase. He hablado sobre mí y cuando he hecho un error, he dicho: 'estoy embarazada'. El profesor se ha preocupado un momento y luego ha entendido que solo me he equivocado. Todos nos hemos reído mucho. Ese día he aprendido bien qué significa "estar embarazada", jaja.

UNIT 8

CONVERSATION 1

Figure it out 1 a. a lot better (mucho mejor) b. recently (hace poco) c. Spanish omelette (tortilla de patatas) 2 Me alegro de volver a verte 3 a. Ha comenzado a cocinar. b. Va a hacer arroz con leche. 4 a. ¿Qué tal todo? b. ¡Cuánto tiempo! 5 It's important to practise.

Notice 1 a. la última clase b. la próxima persona c. la próxima hora 2 a. Cuánto b. Qué c. rápido/rápidamente d. a hacer...

Practice 1 a. ¡Cuánto tiempo! Me alegro de volver a verte. b. ¿Qué te cuentas? Veo que... c. Hace poco he comenzado 2 Examples: a. Sé que estudias español como yo. b. ¿Conoces la historia de España? c. ¿Has visto el Museo Thyssen en Madrid? Te lo recomiendo. 3 Example: Hace poco he comenzado a hacer postres. En este momento solo sé hacer unas pocas recetas, pero me gustaría mejorar y aprender cada vez más...

Put it together Example: Hace poco me he apuntado a un curso de cocina porque me gusta mucho hacer tartas, pero no sé hacer la paella. La última vez que lo he intentado no ha salido nada bien. Hasta ahora siempre he tenido que tirarla. Estoy desesperada, pero espero mejorar y aprender cada vez más...

CONVERSATION 2

Figure it out 1 a. Sarah va en bicicleta. b. A veces Felipe va al trabajo en coche. c. Felipe cena en un restaurante con el mejor bocadillo de jamón. d. Felipe normalmente cocina en casa. 2 weird, I have/She has a routine 3 Parece que... 4 a. Yo también/Yo tampoco ... Raramente/Normalmente b. metro, bicicleta, coche

Notice 1 ¿Te va bien? 2 Examples: a. antes de ir al trabajo b. por la noche c. antes d. de vez en cuando e. raramente f. a menudo g. siempre h. a veces i. nunca j. por la ciudad k. a todos lados l. el mismo (lugar) m. en casa n. en coche o. para comer. 3 Examples: a. suelo leer en la biblioteca b. suelo desayunar con mi esposa c. suelo ir al bar con mis amigos d. suelo mirar Facebook e. suelo beber un te.

Practice 1 Voy a correr. Saco fotografías. Aprendo idiomas. 2 Examples: a. Me gusta ir a la biblioteca. ¡Hay tantos libros! b. Voy a la biblioteca porque me gusta leer y quiero aprender muchas cosas c. Nunca he ido a España.

Put it together Example: Cada día me despierto a las 7, desayuno con mis padres, me ducho, me visto y voy a trabajar cada día en coche. Entro en la oficina a las 9 y mis compañeros y yo hacemos una pausa para comer a las 14...

CONVERSATION 3

Figure it out 1 a. falso b. verdadero c. verdadero d. falso 2 a. Espero ir al parque con unos amigos a jugar un partidillo de fútbol. b. a jugar un partidillo de fútbol, con unos amigos c. ya he planeado ir de compras con alguien d. con alguien

Notice 1 a. ¿Qué debo llevar? b. ¿A qué hora? c. ¿Podrías escribir la dirección? d. Puedo ponerla en el mapa de mi móvil. e. ¿Qué debo comer? f. ¿A qué hora termina? g. ¿Sabes la dirección? h. ¿Dónde es la fiesta? i. ¿A qué hora debo llegar? j. ¿Puedo llevar vino?

Grammar explanation: would, should, could 1 a. iría b. debería c. podría d. podrías 2 a. encantaría b. estarían c. intentaría d. iría e. gustaría f. hablarías

Practice 1 a. ¿Qué haces esta noche? b. ¿Tienes tiempo libre luego para ir al concierto. c. ¿Te gustaría venir? 2 a. Eso sería estupendo. b. Me encantaría, pero por desgracia ya tengo otros planes. 3 a. ¿Te gustaría aprender español conmigo? b. ¿Podrías preguntarme la próxima vez? 4 a. you would prepare b. I would be c. She would travel d. It would seem e. you could

Put it together 1 Example: En un día de vacaciones me despertaría sin alarma, desayunaría algo delicioso con chocolate, me ducharía y no debería ir al trabajo. Primero iría a la playa ... 2 Example: Podría ir en septiembre del año que viene o en noviembre. ¿Qué mes sería mejor para visitar Machu Picchu? ¿Dónde comenzaría el viaje y dónde acabaría? ¿Cuántos días duraría? ...

Your turn: use the hack a. Example: No van a ganar el partido, creo. b. Example: ¡Qué guay! Comemos en este restaurante juntos. c. Example: Me encantaría bailar contigo. d. Example: Prefiero ir luego al supermercado.

COMPLETING UNIT 8

2 a. leer b. las novelas de ciencias ficción y las autobiografías c. muy a menudo, casi todo los días. d. antes de ir a la cama e. leer

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

Build your script Me encanta la fotografía y sacar la foto perfecta. La gente piensa que solo depende de la cámara, pero no es verdad y no es fácil. Me ha gustado siempre la fotografía y tengo la cámara desde hace 5 años. Hasta ahora he ganado 5 concursos de fotografía en Estados Unidos. Todos los días trabajo de 9 a las 3 de la tarde, luego vuelvo a casa y como con mi familia. Por las tardes, suelo ir a hacer la compra o voy al gimnasio. Cada fin de semana me gusta ir con mi pareja a la playa, que está a 20 minutos de mi casa. Voy en coche y me relaja mucho. Allí tomo el sol, me tumbo, me baño y doy paseos. Me gustaría visitar países del norte como Finlandia o Islandia. Todos me han dicho que son preciosos. Cada día me encanta desayunar con calma. Es el momento del día que prefiero. Por eso, me despierto siempre al menos una hora antes de salir de casa. ¡Sin café no sé cómo me llamo!

UNIT 9

CONVERSATION 1

Figure it out 1 a. Es la última semana de Sarah en Madrid. b. Están planeando ir de compras. c. Hay muchos árboles en la avenida. 2 a. That's a pity! b. It depends. c. I'm returning to the US soon. 3 a. en el campo b. las montañas c. el lago y el bosque d. en la calle e. al sol

Notice 1 b. Sarah vuelve la próxima semana. c. Sarah va a comprar regalos. d. Porque quiere recordar Madrid. e. Sarah va a la Gran Vía. 2 a. recordarme b. recordarte c. Me ha recordado 3 a. 6 b. 5 c. 1 d. 3 e. 2 f. 4 4 el campo, las montañas, el lago, la ciudad, el bosque, los árboles, el sol 5 a ¿Vives en el el campo, o en la ciudad? Ex: Vivo en la ciudad b ¿Hay muchos árboles en tu calle? Ex: No, no hay muchos c Es mejor pasar tiempo cerca del lago, del bosque, o de las montañas? Ex: Prefiero pasar tiempo cerca del lago, es más bonito.

Practice 2 Examples: a. Vivo en un pueblo al lado del mar. b. Cerca de mi casa hay un parque y una universidad ... 3. Examples: a. Mi amiga Jackie vive en Nueva York. b. Su casa es maravillosa y está cerca de Central Park ...

Vocab explanation: talking about the weather **1 a.** Hace buen tiempo. **b.** Hace mal tiempo. ¡Qué pena! **c.** Hace frío cerca del lago. **2 Example:** Ahora estoy cerca de la playa, pero aquí está nublado. Hace mucho viento y mucho frío.

Put it together **1 Example:** La playa de la ciudad donde vivo es muy bonita. Es muy ancha y parece una playa oceánica de Estados Unidos. Está llena de palmeras, pero no hay bares cerca. Por esa razón, es muy tranquila...

CONVERSATION 2

Figure it out **1 a.** falso **b.** verdadero **c.** falso **2 a.** jamón y un vestido **b.** una aventurera **c.** joven **d.** tradicionales **e.** más barata **3 a.** impresionante **b.** aventurera **c.** típico **d.** aburrido **e.** viejo **f.** nuevo **g.** tradicionales **4 a.** ya **b.** muchas cosas **c.** bastante **d.** más barata **e.** sería aburrido

Notice **1 a.** eso me recuerda **b.** que debo comprar **c.** hay tantas tiendas **d.** muy aburrido **2 a.** fácil, difícil **b.** único, típico **c.** estúpidos, inteligentes **d.** modernos, tradicionales **e.** aventurera, tímida **f.** viejo, joven **3 a.** La tienda está abierta. **b.** Las tiendas están abiertas. **c.** La tienda estaría abierta. **d.** Mi hermano es alto. **e.** Mis hermanos son altos. **f.** Mi hermana es alta. **g.** Mis hermanas son altas.

Practice **1** Es el más barato/Es la más barata. **2** Examples:

Spanish (m/f)	Meaning	Spanish (m/f)	Meaning
<i>tímido@</i>	shy/timid	<i>aventurero@</i>	adventurous
<i>feo@</i>	ugly	<i>guapo@</i>	attractive
<i>viejo@</i>	old	<i>joven</i>	young
<i>raro@</i>	strange/weird	<i>típico@</i>	typical
<i>desagradable</i>	unpleasant	<i>simpático@</i>	friendly
<i>pesimista</i>	pessimistic	<i>optimista</i>	optimist
<i>orgulloso@</i>	proud	<i>modesto@</i>	modest
<i>divertido@</i>	fun	<i>serio@</i>	serious

3 a. atractivo **b.** atento **c.** creativo **d.** curioso **e.** honesto **f.** inteligente **g.** sincero **h.** tolerante **i.** ignorante **j.** impaciente

4 Examples: **a.** Soy muy simpático y curioso. Mi trabajo es muy interesante y aprendo algo nuevo cada día. **b.** Mi hermano es muy inteligente y creativo. Su casa es muy bonita y elegante. **c.** Mi amiga es rubia, muy alta y es la mejor persona que conozco.

Put it together Example: Mi madre y mi padre son personas muy distintas. Mi padre es muy optimista y determinado, mientras que mi madre suele ser un poco pesimista, pero muy simpática y generosa...

CONVERSATION 3

Figure it out 1 a. (for jogging) Él usa los auriculares para videojuegos online. b. (not) Los auriculares son un poco caros. c. (in cash) Sarah va a pagar con tarjeta de crédito. 2 En efectivo, con tarjeta de crédito. At that price. 3 a. negros b. verdes 4 serían

Notice 1 a. parece b. se usa para 2 ¿Para qué tipo de juegos los usa tu hermano?, tengo que usar mi tarjeta de crédito 3 a. este/esta b. el negro/la negra c. el pequeño/la pequeña d. el nuevo/la nueva 5 a. un poco caro b. pagar en efectivo c. usar mi tarjeta de crédito d. la caja

Practice 1 a. ¿Cuánto cuesta el/la grande? b. calidad c. ¿Puedo usarlo ahora? d. ¿Acepta tarjeta de crédito? e. ¿Puedo pagar en efectivo? 2 a. los rojos b. esa marca c. la caja d. grande 3 long, anch@, de buena calidad, bad quality, heavy, verde, black

Put it together Example: Busco un accesorio de lana para el cuello, adecuado para el invierno. Es de color azul y es de Ralph Lauren...

COMPLETING UNIT 9

2 a. No b. Su amigo c. La vista es impresionante d. hoy está lloviendo e. No.

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

Build your script La ciudad donde he crecido es muy pequeña y no hay mucho que hacer o que ver allí. Por eso, no la recomiendo a los turistas. Pero tiene mar y la playa es muy bonita. Aparte de la playa, hay colinas y montañas cerca de la ciudad. El clima es templado y suele hacer buen tiempo y calor en verano. En invierno hace frío, pero no suele nevar porque está cerca del mar (solo de vez en cuando). Ya no vivo allí, pero mis padres y mi hermano aún sí, en una casa muy grande de tres plantas. Mis padres y mi hermano son las personas más importantes en mi vida. Mi hermano tiene 25 años y es matemático. Mis padres están jubilados. Los echo de menos, así que me he comprado un marco de fotos para poner una foto nuestra en el salón de mi casa.

UNIT 10

COMPLETING UNIT 10

2 Sara, Guatemala, Buenos Aires, 3 años, francés y portugués, viajar y leer.

COMPLETE YOUR MISSION

¡Me alegro de hablar contigo hoy! Mi nombre es Benny. Quiero aprender español para mi trabajo. ¿Cuántos estudiantes tienes? ¿Desde cuándo enseñas? No quiero hablar de gramática. ¿Podemos hablar de ordenadores? Muchas gracias por tu tiempo hoy. ¡Hasta la próxima (vez)!

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Though my name and face may be on the cover, there are so many people whose voices and ideas are in these pages.

I was fortunate to meet many native Spanish speakers who encouraged me when I was a struggling beginner, from the Erasmus students I learnt with in Valencia, to my tango and salsa instructors in Argentina and Colombia. My Spanish-learning experience has been filled with friends who made the language come alive and gave me the passion to inspire others.

There aren't enough praises I can sing about my editor **Sarah Cole**, who first reached out to me with the exciting prospect of collaborating with *Teach Yourself*. She worked with me for over two years with unwavering support and passion for my vision of a modern language course. I cannot imagine that any other publisher could have brought so much life to these courses.

Melissa Baker worked behind the scenes to juggle timetables and perform more than a few miracles to ensure all the pieces of this publishing puzzle came together. I am grateful to the rest of the *Teach Yourself* team in both the UK and US, who showed incredible enthusiasm in creating a totally new kind of language course.

Becca Mosher worked with me over many months alongside my 'mini team', **Alessandra, Andrew**, and native speaker **Andrés** who brought fun Spanish expressions and slang to the conversations, often staying up very late to help me get them just right.

I owe a huge thank-you to the brilliant people at Team FI3M: **Bálint, David, Kittichai, Dávid, Joe, Ingo, Joseph, Adam, Holly and LC**, who kept my website, *Fluent in 3 Months*, running while I was busy writing these courses and made sure we continued to do innovative work. Thank you all.

Finally, my partner **Lauren**, without whom this course never could have come to light. She is the Pepper Potts to my Tony Stark – she makes sure my crazy ideas run smoothly and professionally, and she came up with many of the cleverest concepts that you see in these pages. Her perfectionism and academic background turned my ideas for a good course, into a truly great one.

Published in Great Britain in 2016 by Hodder & Stoughton
An Hachette UK company

Published in the United States in 2016 by Quercus

Copyright © Brendan Lewis 2016

The right of Brendan (Benny) Lewis to be identified as the Authors of the Work has been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

The *Teach Yourself* name is a registered trademark of Hachette UK.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of the publisher, nor be otherwise circulated in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

A CIP catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library

9781473633223 (UK)

9781681441047 (US)

Cover image © Allison Hooban

Illustrations © Will McPhail

John Murray Learning Ltd
Carmelite House
50 Victoria Embankment
London EC4Y 0DZ

www.hodder.co.uk

Distributed in the United States and Canada by
Hachette Book Group
1290 Avenue of the Americas
New York, NY 10104

www.quercus.com